

**The Apocrypha**  
*and*  
**Pseudepigrapha**  
*of the*  
**Old Testament**

**Volume Two:**  
**Prophetic and Apocalyptic Texts**

*Compiled by J. Jury*

# Table of Contents

## Prophetic and Apocalyptic Texts

Enoch  
Letter of Jeremiah  
Baruch  
Apocalypse of Baruch (*2 Baruch*)  
Letter of Baruch  
Apocalypse of Ezra (*4 Ezra / 2 Esdras 3-14*)  
Additions to Daniel

## Comparative Canon Chart

|                      | Greek | Latin | Syriac | Ethiopian | Armenian |
|----------------------|-------|-------|--------|-----------|----------|
| Enoch                |       |       |        | X         |          |
| Letter of Jeremiah   | X     | X     | X      | X         | X        |
| Baruch               | X     | X     | X      | X         | X        |
| Apocalypse of Baruch |       |       | X      |           |          |
| Letter of Baruch     |       |       | X      |           |          |
| Apocalypse of Ezra   |       | X     | X      | X         | X        |
| Rest of Daniel       | X     | X     | X      | X         | X        |

# The Book of Enoch

## Chapter 1

1 The words of the blessing of Enoch, wherewith he blessed the elect and righteous, who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked and godless are to be removed.

2 And he took up his parable and said- Enoch a righteous man, whose eyes were opened by God, saw the vision of the Holy One in the heavens, which the angels showed me, and from them I heard everything, and from them I understood as I saw, but not for this generation, but for a remote one which is for to come.

3 Concerning the elect I said, and took up my parable concerning them: The Holy Great One will come forth from His dwelling,

4 And the eternal God will tread upon the earth, even on Mount Sinai, and appear from His camp and appear in the strength of His might from the heaven of heavens.

5 And all shall be smitten with fear, and the Watchers shall quake, and great fear and trembling shall seize them unto the ends of the earth.

6 And the high mountains shall be shaken, and the high hills shall be made low, and shall melt like wax before the flame.

7 And the earth shall be wholly rent in sunder, and all that is upon the earth shall perish, and there shall be a judgement upon all men.

8 But with the righteous He will make peace. And will protect the elect, and mercy shall be upon them. And they shall all belong to God, and they shall be prospered, and they shall all be blessed. And He will help them all, and light shall appear unto them, and He will make peace with them.

9 And behold! He cometh with ten thousands of His holy ones to execute judgement upon all, and to destroy all the ungodly: and to convict all flesh of all the works of their ungodliness which they have ungodly committed, and of all the hard things which ungodly sinners have spoken against Him.

## Chapter 2

1 Observe ye everything that takes place in the heaven, how they do not change their orbits, and the luminaries which are in the heaven, how they all rise and set in order each in its season, and transgress not against their appointed order.

2 Behold ye the earth, and give heed to the things which take place upon it from first to last, how steadfast they are, how none of the things upon

earth change, but all the works of God appear to you.

3 Behold the summer and the winter, how the whole earth is filled with water, and clouds and dew and rain lie upon it.

### Chapter 3

1 Observe and see how in the winter all the trees seem as though they had withered and shed all their leaves, except fourteen trees, which do not lose their foliage but retain the old foliage from two to three years till the new comes.

### Chapter 4

1 And again, observe ye the days of summer how the sun is above the earth over against it. And you seek shade and shelter by reason of the heat of the sun, and the earth also burns with growing heat, and so you cannot tread on the earth, or on a rock by reason of its heat.

### Chapter 5

1 Observe ye how the trees cover themselves with green leaves and bear fruit: wherefore give ye heed and know with regard to all His works, and recognize how He that liveth for ever hath made them so.

2 And all His works go on thus from year to year for ever, and all the tasks which they accomplish for Him, and their tasks change not, but according as God hath ordained so is it done.

3 And behold how the sea and the rivers in like manner accomplish and change not their tasks from His commandments.

4 But ye- ye have not been steadfast, nor done the commandments of YHWH, But ye have turned away and spoken proud and hard words With your impure mouths against His greatness. Oh, ye hardhearted, ye shall find no peace.

5 Therefore shall ye execrate your days, and the years of your life shall perish, and the years of your destruction shall be multiplied in eternal execration, and ye shall find no mercy.

6 In those days ye shall make your names an eternal execration unto all the righteous, and by you shall all who curse, curse, and all the sinners and godless shall imprecate by you, and all the righteous shall rejoice, and there shall be forgiveness of sins, and every mercy and peace and forbearance: there shall be salvation unto them, a goodly light. And for all of you sinners there shall be no salvation, but on you all shall abide a curse.

7 But for the elect there shall be light and joy and peace, and they shall

inherit the earth. And for you, the godless, there shall be a curse.

8 And then there shall be bestowed upon the elect wisdom, and they shall all live and never again sin, either through ungodliness or through pride: but they who are wise shall be humble.

9 And they shall not again transgress, nor shall they sin all the days of their life, nor shall they die of the divine anger or wrath, but they shall complete the number of the days of their life.

10 And their lives shall be increased in peace, and the years of their joy shall be multiplied, in eternal gladness and peace, all the days of their life.

## Chapter 6

1 And it came to pass when the children of men had multiplied that in those days were born unto them beautiful and comely daughters.

2 And the angels, the children of the heaven, saw and lusted after them, and said to one another: Come, let us choose us wives from among the children of men and beget us children.

3 And Semjaza, who was their leader, said unto them: I fear ye will not indeed agree to do this deed, and I alone shall have to pay the penalty of a great sin.

4 And they all answered him and said: Let us all swear an oath, and all bind ourselves by mutual imprecations not to abandon this plan but to do this thing.

5 Then sware they all together and bound themselves by mutual imprecations upon it.

6 And they were in all two hundred; who descended in the days of Jared on the summit of Mount Hermon, and they called it Mount Hermon, because they had sworn and bound themselves by mutual imprecations upon it.

7 And these are the names of their leaders: Semjaza, their leader, Araklba, Rameel, Kokablel, Tamlal, Ramlel, Danel, Ezeqeel, Baraqijal, Asael, Armaros, Batarel, Ananel, Zaq1el, Samsapeel, Satarel, Turel, Jomjael, Sariel.

8 These are their chiefs of the chiefs of tens.

## Chapter 7

1 And all the others together with them took unto themselves wives, and each chose for himself one, and they began to go in unto them and to defile themselves with them,

2 And they taught them charms and enchantments, and the cutting of roots, and made them acquainted with plants.

3 And they became pregnant, and they bare great giants, whose height was three thousand ells: Who consumed all the acquisitions of men.

4 And when men could no longer sustain them, the giants turned against them and devoured mankind.

5 And they began to sin against birds, and beasts, and reptiles, and fish, and to devour one another's flesh, and drink the blood.

6 Then the earth laid accusation against the lawless ones.

## Chapter 8

1 And Azazel taught men to make swords, and knives, and shields, and breastplates, and made known to them the metals of the earth and the art of working them, and bracelets, and ornaments, and the use of antimony, and the beautifying of the eyelids, and all kinds of costly stones, and all colouring tinctures.

2 And there arose much godlessness, and they committed fornication, and they were led astray, and became corrupt in all their ways.

3 Semjaza taught enchantments, and root-cuttings, Armaros the resolving of enchantments, Baraqijal taught astrology, Kokabel the constellations, Ezeqeel the knowledge of the clouds, Araqiel the signs of the earth, Shamsiel the signs of the sun, and Sariel the course of the moon.

4 And as men perished, they cried, and their cry went up to heaven.

## Chapter 9

1 And then Michael, Uriel, Raphael, and Gabriel looked down from heaven and saw much blood being shed upon the earth, and all lawlessness being wrought upon the earth.

2 And they said one to another: The earth made without inhabitant cries the voice of their cryingst up to the gates of heaven.

3 And now to you, the holy ones of heaven, the souls of men make their suit, saying, Bring our cause before the Most High.

4 And they said to the Lord of the ages: Lord of lords, God of gods, King of kings, and God of the ages, the throne of Thy glory standeth unto all the generations of the ages, and Thy name holy and glorious and blessed unto all the ages!

5 Thou hast made all things, and power over all things hast Thou: and all things are naked and open in Thy sight, and Thou seest all things, and nothing can hide itself from Thee.

6 Thou seest what Azazel hath done, who hath taught all unrighteousness on earth and revealed the eternal secrets which were preserved in heaven, which men were striving to learn:

7 And Semjaza, to whom Thou hast given authority to bear rule over his associates.

8 And they have gone to the daughters of men upon the earth, and have slept with the women, and have defiled themselves, and revealed to them all kinds of sins.

9 And the women have borne giants, and the whole earth has thereby been filled with blood and unrighteousness.

10 And now, behold, the souls of those who have died are crying and making their suit to the gates of heaven, and their lamentations have ascended: and cannot cease because of the lawless deeds which are wrought on the earth.

11 And Thou knowest all things before they come to pass, and Thou seest these things and Thou dost suffer them, and Thou dost not say to us what we are to do to them in regard to these.

## Chapter 10

1 Then said the Most High, the Holy and Great One spake, and sent Uriel to the son of Lamech, and said to him:

2 Go to Noah and tell him in my name, Hide thyself! and reveal to him the end that is approaching: that the whole earth will be destroyed, and a deluge is about to come upon the whole earth, and will destroy all that is on it.

3 And now instruct him that he may escape and his seed may be preserved for all the generations of the world.

4 And again YHWH said to Raphael: Bind Azazel hand and foot, and cast him into the darkness: and make an opening in the desert, which is in Dudael, and cast him therein.

5 And place upon him rough and jagged rocks, and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there for ever, and cover his face that he may not see light.

6 And on the day of the great judgement he shall be cast into the fire.

7 And heal the earth which the angels have corrupted, and proclaim the healing of the earth, that they may heal the plague, and that all the children of men may not perish through all the secret things that the Watchers have disclosed and have taught their sons.

8 And the whole earth has been corrupted through the works that were taught by Azazel: to him ascribe all sin.

9 And to Gabriel said YHWH: Proceed against the bastards and the reprobates, and against the children of fornication: and destroy the children of fornication and the children of the Watchers from amongst men and cause them to go forth: send them one against the other that they may destroy each other in battle: for length of days shall they not have.

10 And no request that they make of thee shall be granted unto their

fathers on their behalf; for they hope to live an eternal life, and that each one of them will live five hundred years.

11 And YHWH said unto Michael: Go, bind Semjaza and his associates who have united themselves with women so as to have defiled themselves with them in all their uncleanness.

12 And when their sons have slain one another, and they have seen the destruction of their beloved ones, bind them fast for seventy generations in the valleys of the earth, till the day of their judgement and of their consummation, till the judgement that is for ever and ever is consummated.

13 In those days they shall be led off to the abyss of fire: and to the torment and the prison in which they shall be confined for ever.

14 And whosoever shall be condemned and destroyed will from thenceforth be bound together with them to the end of all generations.

15 And destroy all the spirits of the reprobate and the children of the Watchers, because they have wronged mankind.

16 Destroy all wrong from the face of the earth and let every evil work come to an end: and let the plant of righteousness and truth appear: and it shall prove a blessing; the works of righteousness and truth shall be planted in truth and joy for evermore.

17 And then shall all the righteous escape, and shall live till they beget thousands of children, and all the days of their youth and their old age shall they complete in peace.

18 And then shall the whole earth be tilled in righteousness, and shall all be planted with trees and be full of blessing.

19 And all desirable trees shall be planted on it, and they shall plant vines on it: and the vine which they plant thereon shall yield wine in abundance, and as for all the seed which is sown thereon each measure of it shall bear a thousand, and each measure of olives shall yield ten presses of oil.

20 And cleanse thou the earth from all oppression, and from all unrighteousness, and from all sin, and from all godlessness: and all the uncleanness that is wrought upon the earth destroy from off the earth.

21 And all the children of men shall become righteous, and all nations shall offer adoration and shall praise Me, and all shall worship Me.

22 And the earth shall be cleansed from all defilement, and from all sin, and from all punishment, and from all torment, and I will never again send them upon it from generation to generation and for ever.

## Chapter 11

1 And in those days I will open the store chambers of blessing which are in the heaven, so as to send them down upon the earth over the work and labour of the children of men.



2 And truth and peace shall be associated together throughout all the days of the world and throughout all the generations of men.

## Chapter 12

1 Before these things Enoch was hidden, and no one of the children of men knew where he was hidden, and where he abode, and what had become of him.

2 And his activities had to do with the Watchers, and his days were with the holy ones.

3 And I Enoch was blessing the Lord of majesty and the King of the ages, and lo! the Watchers called me- Enoch the scribe- and said to me:

4 Enoch, thou scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives:

5 Ye have wrought great destruction on the earth: and ye shall have no peace nor forgiveness of sin:

6 and inasmuch as they delight themselves in their children, the murder of their beloved ones shall they see, and over the destruction of their children shall they lament, and shall make supplication unto eternity, but mercy and peace shall ye not attain.

## Chapter 13

1 And Enoch went and said: Azazel, thou shalt have no peace: a severe sentence has gone forth against thee to put thee in bonds:

2 and thou shalt not have toleration nor request granted to thee, because of the unrighteousness which thou hast taught, and because of all the works of godlessness and unrighteousness and sin which thou hast shown to men.

3 Then I went and spoke to them all together, and they were all afraid, and fear and trembling seized them.

4 And they besought me to draw up a petition for them that they might find forgiveness, and to read their petition in the presence of the Lord of heaven.

5 For from thenceforward they could not speak with Him nor lift up their eyes to heaven for shame of their sins for which they had been condemned.

6 Then I wrote out their petition, and the prayer in regard to their spirits and their deeds individually and in regard to their requests that they should have forgiveness and length.

7 And I went off and sat down at the waters of Dan, in the land of Dan, to the south of the west of Hermon: I read their petition till I fell asleep.  
8 And behold a dream came to me, and visions fell down upon me, and I saw visions of chastisement, and a voice came bidding me to tell it to the sons of heaven, and reprimand them. 9 And when I awaked, I came unto them, and they were all sitting gathered together, weeping in 10 'Abelsjail, which is between Lebanon and Seneser, with their faces covered. And I recounted before them all the visions which I had seen in sleep, and I began to speak the words of righteousness, and to reprimand the heavenly Watchers.

## Chapter 14

1 The book of the words of righteousness, and of the reprimand of the eternal Watchers in accordance with the command of the Holy Great One in that vision.

2 I saw in my sleep what I will now say with a tongue of flesh and with the breath of my mouth: which the Great One has given to men to converse therewith and understand with the heart.

3 As He has created and given to man the power of understanding the word of wisdom, so hath He created me also and given me the power of reprimanding the Watchers, the children of heaven.

4 I wrote out your petition, and in my vision it appeared thus, that your petition will not be granted unto you throughout all the days of eternity, and that judgement has been finally passed upon you: yea your petition will not be granted unto you.

5 And from henceforth you shall not ascend into heaven unto all eternity, and in bonds of the earth the decree has gone forth to bind you for all the days of the world.

6 And that previously you shall have seen the destruction of your beloved sons and ye shall have no pleasure in them, but they shall fall before you by the sword.

7 And your petition on their behalf shall not be granted, nor yet on your own: even though you weep and pray and speak all the words contained in the writing which I have written.

8 And the vision was shown to me thus: Behold, in the vision clouds invited me and a mist summoned me, and the course of the stars and the lightnings sped and hastened me, and the winds in the vision caused me to fly and lifted me upward, and bore me into heaven.

9 And I went in till I drew nigh to a wall which is built of crystals and surrounded by tongues of fire: and it began to affright me.

10 And I went into the tongues of fire and drew nigh to a large house

which was built of crystals: and the walls of the house were like a tessellated floor made of crystals, and its groundwork was of crystal.

11 Its ceiling was like the path of the stars and the lightnings, and between them were fiery cherubim, and their heaven was clear as water.

12 A flaming fire surrounded the walls, and its 13 portals blazed with fire. And I entered into that house, and it was hot as fire and cold as ice: there were no delights of life therein: fear covered me, and trembling got hold upon me.

14 And as I quaked and trembled, I fell upon my face.

15 And I beheld a vision, And lo! there was a second house, greater than the former, and the entire portal stood open before me, and it was built of flames of fire.

16 And in every respect it so excelled in splendour and magnificence and extent that I cannot describe to you its splendour and its extent.

17 And its floor was of fire, and above it were lightnings and the path of the stars, and its ceiling also was flaming fire.

18 And I looked and saw therein a lofty throne: its appearance was as crystal, and the wheels thereof as the shining sun, and there was the vision of cherubim.

19 And from underneath the throne came streams of flaming fire so that I could not look thereon.

20 And the Great Glory sat thereon, and His raiment shone more brightly than the sun and was whiter than any snow.

21 None of the angels could enter and could behold His face by reason of the magnificence and glory and no flesh could behold Him.

22 The flaming fire was round about Him, and a great fire stood before Him, and none around could draw nigh Him: ten thousand times ten thousand stood before Him, yet He needed no counselor.

23 And the most holy ones who were nigh to Him did not leave by night nor depart from Him.

24 And until then I had been prostrate on my face, trembling: and YHWH called me with His own mouth, and said to me: Come hither, Enoch, and hear my word.

25 And one of the holy ones came to me and waked me, and He made me rise up and approach the door: and I bowed my face downwards.

## Chapter 15

1 And He answered and said to me, and I heard His voice: Fear not, Enoch, thou righteous man and scribe of righteousness: approach hither and hear my voice.

2 And go, say to the Watchers of heaven, who have sent thee to intercede

for them: You should intercede for men, and not men for you:

3 Wherefore have ye left the high, holy, and eternal heaven, and lain with women, and defiled yourselves with the daughters of men and taken to yourselves wives, and done like the children of earth, and begotten giants as your sons;

4 and though ye were holy, spiritual, living the eternal life, you have defiled yourselves with the blood of women, and have begotten children with the blood of flesh, and, as the children of men, have lusted after flesh and blood as those also do who die and perish.

5 Therefore have I given them wives also that they might impregnate them, and beget children by them, that thus nothing might be wanting to them on earth.

6 But you were formerly spiritual, living the eternal life, and immortal for all generations of the world.

7 And therefore I have not appointed wives for you; for as for the spiritual ones of the heaven, in heaven is their dwelling.

8 And now, the giants, who are produced from the spirits and flesh, shall be called evil spirits upon the earth, and on the earth shall be their dwelling.

9 Evil spirits have proceeded from their bodies; because they are born from men and from the holy Watchers is their beginning and primal origin; they shall be evil spirits on earth, and evil spirits shall they be called.

10 As for the spirits of heaven, in heaven shall be their dwelling, but as for the spirits of the earth which were born upon the earth, on the earth shall be their dwelling. And the spirits of the giants afflict, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and work destruction on the earth, and cause trouble: they take no food, but nevertheless 12 hunger and thirst, and cause offences. And these spirits shall rise up against the children of men and against the women, because they have proceeded from them.

## Chapter 16

1 From the days of the slaughter and destruction and death of the giants, from the souls of whose flesh the spirits, having gone forth, shall destroy without incurring judgement- thus shall they destroy until the day of the consummation, the great judgement in which the age shall be consummated, over the Watchers and the godless, yea, shall be wholly consummated.

2 And now as to the watchers who have sent thee to intercede for them, who had been aforetime in heaven, say to them:

3 You have been in heaven, but all the mysteries had not yet been revealed to you, and you knew worthless ones, and these in the hardness of your hearts you have made known to the women, and through these mysteries

women and men work much evil on earth.  
4 Say to them therefore: You have no peace.

## Chapter 17

1 And they took and brought me to a place in which those who were there were like flaming fire, and, when they wished, they appeared as men.  
2 And they brought me to the place of darkness, and to a mountain the point of whose summit reached to heaven.  
3 And I saw the places of the luminaries and the treasuries of the stars and of the thunder and in the uttermost depths, where were a fiery bow and arrows and their quiver, and a fiery sword and all the lightnings.  
4 And they took me to the living waters, and to the fire of the west, which receives every setting of the sun.  
5 And I came to a river of fire in which the fire flows like water and discharges itself into the great sea towards the west.  
6 I saw the great rivers and came to the great river and to the great darkness, and went to the place where no flesh walks.  
7 I saw the mountains of the darkness of winter and the place whence all the waters of the deep flow.  
8 I saw the mouths of all the rivers of the earth and the mouth of the deep.

## Chapter 18

1 I saw the treasuries of all the winds: I saw how He had furnished with them the whole creation and the firm foundations of the earth.  
2 And I saw the cornerstone of the earth: I saw the four winds which bear the earth and the firmament of the heaven.  
3 And I saw how the winds stretch out the vaults of heaven, and have their station between heaven and earth: these are the pillars of the heaven.  
4 I saw the winds of heaven which turn and bring the circumference of the sun and all the stars to their setting.  
5 I saw the winds on the earth carrying the clouds: I saw the paths of the angels.  
6 I saw at the end of the earth the firmament of the heaven above. And I proceeded and saw a place which burns day and night, where there are seven mountains of magnificent stones, three towards the east, and three towards the south.  
7 And as for those towards the east, was of coloured stone, and one of pearl, and one of jacinth, and those towards the south of red stone.  
8 But the middle one reached to heaven like the throne of God, of

alabaster, and the summit of the throne was of sapphire.

9 And I saw a flaming fire.

10 And beyond these mountains is a region the end of the great earth: there the heavens were completed.

11 And I saw a deep abyss, with columns of heavenly fire, and among them I saw columns of fire fall, which were beyond measure alike towards the height and towards the depth.

12 And beyond that abyss I saw a place which had no firmament of the heaven above, and no firmly founded earth beneath it: there was no water upon it, and no birds, but it was a waste and horrible place.

13 I saw there seven stars like great burning mountains, and to me, when I inquired regarding them,

14 the angel said: This place is the end of heaven and earth: this has become a prison for the stars and the host of heaven.

15 And the stars which roll over the fire are they which have transgressed the commandment of YHWH in the beginning of their rising, because they did not come forth at their appointed times.

16 And He was wroth with them, and bound them till the time when their guilt should be consummated in the appointed time.

## Chapter 19

1 And Uriel said to me: Here shall stand the angels who have connected themselves with women, and their spirits assuming many different forms are defiling mankind and shall lead them astray into sacrificing to demons as gods, here shall they stand, till the day of the great judgement in which they shall be judged till they are made an end of.

2 And the women also of the angels who went astray shall be judged.

3 And I, Enoch, alone saw the vision, the ends of all things: and no man shall see as I have seen.

## Chapter 20

1 And these are the names of the holy angels who watch.

2 Uriel, one of the holy angels, who is over the world and over Tartarus.

3 Raphael, one of the holy angels, who is over the spirits of men.

4 Raguel, one of the holy angels who takes vengeance on the world of the luminaries.

5 Michael, one of the holy angels, to wit, he that is set over the best part of mankind and over chaos.

6 Saraqael, one of the holy angels, who is set over the spirits, who sin in the spirit.

7 Gabriel, one of the holy angels, who is over Paradise and the serpents and the Cherubim.

8 Remiel, one of the holy angels, whom God set over those who rise.

## Chapter 21

1 And I proceeded to where things were chaotic.

2 And I saw there something horrible: I saw neither a heaven above nor a firmly founded earth, but a place chaotic and horrible.

3 And there I saw seven stars of the heaven bound together in it, like great mountains and burning with fire.

4 Then I said: For what sin are they bound, and on what account have they been cast in hither?

5 Then said Uriel, one of the holy angels, who was with me, and was chief over them, and said: Enoch, why dost thou ask, and why art thou eager for the truth?

6 These are of the number of the stars of heaven, which have transgressed the commandment of YHWH, and are bound here till ten thousand years, the time entailed by their sins, are consummated.

7 And from thence I went to another place, which was still more horrible than the former, and I saw a horrible thing: a great fire there which burnt and blazed, and the place was cleft as far as the abyss, being full of great descending columns of fire: neither its extent or magnitude could I see, nor could I conjecture.

8 Then I said: How fearful is the place and how terrible to look upon!

9 Then Uriel answered me, one of the holy angels who was with me, and said unto me: Enoch, why hast thou such fear and affright?

10 And I answered: Because of this fearful place, and because of the spectacle of the pain.

11 And he said unto me: This place is the prison of the angels, and here they will be imprisoned for ever.

## Chapter 22

1 And thence I went to another place, and he showed me in the west another great and high mountain of hard rock.

2 And there were four hollow places in it, deep and very smooth: three of them were dark and one bright; and there was a fountain of water in its midst. And I said: How smooth are these hollow places, and deep and dark to view.

3 Then Raphael answered, one of the holy angels who was with me, and said unto me: These hollow places have been created for this very purpose,

that the spirits of the souls of the dead should assemble therein, yea that all the souls of the children of men should assemble here.

4 And these places have been made to receive them till the day of their judgement and till their appointed period, till the period appointed, till the great judgement comes upon them.

5 I saw the spirit of a dead man making suit, and his voice went forth to heaven and made suit.

6 And I asked Raphael the angel who was with me, and I said unto him: This spirit which maketh suit, whose is it, whose voice goeth forth and maketh suit to heaven?

7 And he answered me saying: This is the spirit which went forth from Abel, whom his brother Cain slew, and he makes his suit against him till his seed is destroyed from the face of the earth, and his seed is annihilated from amongst the seed of men.

8 Then I asked regarding all the hollow places: Why is one separated from the other?

9 And he answered me saying: These three have been made that the spirits of the dead might be separated. And this division has been made for the spirits of the righteous, in which there is the bright spring of water.

10 And this has been made for sinners when they die and are buried in the earth and judgement has not been executed upon them in their lifetime.

11 Here their spirits shall be set apart in this great pain, till the great day of judgement, scourgings, and torments of the accursed for ever, so that there may be retribution for their spirits. There He shall bind them for ever.

12 And this division has been made for the spirits of those who make their suit, who make disclosures concerning their destruction, when they were slain in the days of the sinners.

13 And this has been made for the spirits of men who shall not be righteous but sinners, who are godless, and of the lawless they shall be companions: but their spirits shall not be punished in the day of judgement nor shall they be raised from thence.

14 Then I blessed the Lord of Glory and said: Blessed art Thou, Lord of righteousness, who rulest over the world.

## Chapter 23

1 From thence I went to another place to the west of the ends of the earth.

2 And I saw a burning fire which ran without resting, and paused not from its course day or night but ran regularly.

3 And I asked saying: What is this which rests not?

4 Then Raguel, one of the holy angels who was with me, answered me and



said unto me: This course of fire which thou hast seen is the fire in the west which persecutes all the luminaries of heaven.

## Chapter 24

1 And from thence I went to another place of the earth, and he showed me a mountain range of fire which burnt day and night.

2 And I went beyond it and saw seven magnificent mountains all differing each from the other, and the stones thereof were magnificent and beautiful, magnificent as a whole, of glorious appearance and fair exterior: three towards the east, one founded on the other, and three towards the south, one upon the other, and deep rough ravines, no one of which joined with any other.

3 And the seventh mountain was in the midst of these, and it excelled them in height, resembling the seat of a throne: and fragrant trees encircled the throne.

4 And amongst them was a tree such as I had never yet smelt, neither was any amongst them nor were others like it: it had a fragrance beyond all fragrance, and its leaves and blooms and wood wither not for ever: and its fruit is beautiful, and its fruit resembles the dates of a palm.

5 Then I said: How beautiful is this tree, and fragrant, and its leaves are fair, and its blooms very delightful in appearance.

6 Then answered Michael, one of the holy and honoured angels who was with me, and was their leader.

## Chapter 25

1 And he said unto me: Enoch, why dost thou ask me regarding the fragrance of the tree, and why dost thou wish to learn the truth?

2 Then I answered him saying: I wish to know about everything, but especially about this tree.'

3 And he answered saying: This high mountain which thou hast seen, whose summit is like the throne of God, is His throne, where the Holy Great One, the Lord of Glory, the Eternal King, will sit, when He shall come down to visit the earth with goodness.

4 And as for this fragrant tree no mortal is permitted to touch it till the great judgement, when He shall take vengeance on all and bring everything to its consummation for ever. It shall then be given to the righteous and holy.

5 Its fruit shall be for food to the elect: it shall be transplanted to the holy place, to the temple of YHWH, the Eternal King.

6 Then shall they rejoice with joy and be glad, and into the holy place shall

they enter; and its fragrance shall be in their bones, and they shall live a long life on earth, such as thy fathers lived: and in their days shall no sorrow or plague or torment or calamity touch them.

7 Then blessed I the God of Glory, the Eternal King, who hath prepared such things for the righteous, and hath created them and promised to give to them.

## Chapter 26

1 And I went from thence to the middle of the earth, and I saw a blessed place in which there were trees with branches abiding and blooming of a dismembered tree.

2 And there I saw a holy mountain, and underneath the mountain to the east there was a stream and it flowed towards the south.

3 And I saw towards the east another mountain higher than this, and between them a deep and narrow ravine: in it also ran a stream underneath the mountain.

4 And to the west thereof there was another mountain, lower than the former and of small elevation, and a ravine deep and dry between them: and another deep and dry ravine was at the extremities of the three mountains.

5 And all the ravines were deep and narrow, being formed of hard rock, and trees were not planted upon them.

6 And I marveled at the rocks, and I marveled at the ravine, yea, I marveled very much.

## Chapter 27

1 Then said I: For what object is this blessed land, which is entirely filled with trees, and this accursed valley between?

2 Then Uriel, one of the holy angels who was with me, answered and said: This accursed valley is for those who are accursed for ever: here shall all the accursed be gathered together who utter with their lips against YHWH unseemly words and of His glory speak hard things.

3 Here shall they be gathered together, and here shall be their place of judgement. In the last days there shall be upon them the spectacle of righteous judgement in the presence of the righteous for ever: here shall the merciful bless the Lord of glory, the Eternal King.

4 In the days of judgement over the former, they shall bless Him for the mercy in accordance with which He has assigned them their lot.

5 Then I blessed the Lord of Glory and set forth His glory and lauded Him gloriously.

## Chapter 28

1 And thence I went towards the east, into the midst of the mountain range of the desert, and I saw a wilderness and it was solitary, full of trees and plants.

2 And water gushed forth from above.

3 Rushing like a copious watercourse which flowed towards the north-west it caused clouds and dew to ascend on every side.

## Chapter 29

1 And thence I went to another place in the desert, and approached to the east of this mountain range.

2 And there I saw aromatic trees exhaling the fragrance of frankincense and myrrh, and the trees also were similar to the almond tree.

## Chapter 30

1 And beyond these, I went afar to the east, and I saw another place, a valley full of water.

2 And therein there was a goodly tree, its fragrance was like that of a mastic.

3 And on the sides of those valleys I saw fragrant cinnamon. And beyond these I proceeded to the east.

## Chapter 31

1 And I saw other mountains, and amongst them were groves of trees, and there flowed forth from them nectar, which is named sarara and galbanum.

2 And beyond these mountains I saw another mountain to the east of the ends of the earth, whereon were aloe trees, and all the trees were full of stacte, being like almond-trees.

3 And when one burnt it, it smelt sweeter than any fragrant odour.

## Chapter 32

1 And after these fragrant odours, as I looked towards the north over the mountains I saw seven mountains full of choice nard and fragrant trees and cinnamon and pepper.

2 And thence I went over the summits of all these mountains, far towards the east of the earth, and passed above the Erythraean sea and went far

from it, and passed over the angel Zotiel.

3 And I came to the Garden of Righteousness, and saw beyond those trees many large trees growing there and of goodly fragrance, large, very beautiful and glorious, and the tree of knowledge whereof they eat and know great wisdom.

4 That tree is in height like the fir, and its leaves are like those of the Carob tree: and its fruit is like the clusters of the vine, very beautiful: and the fragrance of the tree penetrates afar.

5 Then I said: How beautiful is the tree, and how attractive is its look!

6 Then Raphael the holy angel, who was with me, answered me and said: This is the tree of wisdom, of which thy father old in years and thy aged mother, who were before thee, have eaten, and they learnt wisdom and their eyes were opened, and they knew that they were naked and they were driven out of the garden.

### Chapter 33

1 And from thence I went to the ends of the earth and saw there great beasts, and each differed from the other; and I saw birds also differing in appearance and beauty and voice, the one differing from the other.

2 And to the east of those beasts I saw the ends of the earth whereon the heaven rests, and the portals of the heaven open.

3 And I saw how the stars of heaven come forth, and I counted the portals out of which they proceed, and wrote down all their outlets, of each individual star by itself, according to their number and their names, their courses and their positions, and their times and their months, as Uriel the holy angel who was with me showed me.

4 He showed all things to me and wrote them down for me: also their names he wrote for me, and their laws and their companies.

### Chapter 34

1 And from thence I went towards the north to the ends of the earth, and there I saw a great and glorious device at the ends of the whole earth.

2 And here I saw three portals of heaven open in the heaven: through each of them proceed north winds: when they blow there is cold, hail, frost, snow, dew, and rain.

3 And out of one portal they blow for good: but when they blow through the other two portals, it is with violence and affliction on the earth, and they blow with violence.

### Chapter 35

1 And from thence I went towards the west to the ends of the earth, and saw there three portals of the heaven open such as I had seen in the east, the same number of portals, and the same number of outlets.

## Chapter 36

1 And from thence I went to the south to the ends of the earth, and saw there three open portals of the heaven: and thence there come dew, rain, and wind.

2 And from thence I went to the east to the ends of the heaven, and saw here the three eastern portals of heaven open and small portals above them.

3 Through each of these small portals pass the stars of heaven and run their course to the west on the path which is shown to them.

4 And as often as I saw I blessed always the Lord of Glory, and I continued to bless the Lord of Glory who has wrought great and glorious wonders, to show the greatness of His work to the angels and to spirits and to men, that they might praise His work and all His creation: that they might see the work of His might and praise the great work of His hands and bless Him for ever.

## Chapter 37

1 The second vision which he saw, the vision of wisdom- which Enoch the son of Jared, the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan, the son of Enos, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, saw.

2 And this is the beginning of the words of wisdom which I lifted up my voice to speak and say to those which dwell on earth: Hear, ye men of old time, and see, ye that come after, the words of the Holy One which I will speak before YHWH of hosts.

3 It were better to declare them only to the men of old time, but even from those that come after we will not withhold the beginning of wisdom.

4 Till the present day such wisdom has never been given by YHWH of hosts as I have received according to my insight, according to the good pleasure of YHWH of hosts by whom the lot of eternal life has been given to me.

5 Now three parables were imparted to me, and I lifted up my voice and recounted them to those that dwell on the earth.

## Chapter 38

1 The First Parable. When the congregation of the righteous shall appear, and sinners shall be judged for their sins, and shall be driven from the face of the earth:

2 and when the Righteous One shall appear before the eyes of the righteous, whose elect works hang upon YHWH of hosts, and light shall appear to the righteous and the elect who dwell on the earth, where then will be the dwelling of the sinners, and where the resting-place of those who have denied YHWH of hosts? It had been good for them if they had not been born.

3 When the secrets of the righteous shall be revealed and the sinners judged, and the godless driven from the presence of the righteous and elect,

4 From that time those that possess the earth shall no longer be powerful and exalted: and they shall not be able to behold the face of the holy, for YHWH of hosts has caused His light to appear on the face of the holy, righteous, and elect.

5 Then shall the kings and the mighty perish and be given into the hands of the righteous and holy.

6 And thenceforward none shall seek for themselves mercy from YHWH of hosts; for their life is at an end.

## Chapter 39

1 And it shall come to pass in those days that elect and holy children will descend from the high heaven, and their seed will become one with the children of men.

2 And in those days Enoch received books of zeal and wrath, and books of disquiet and expulsion. And mercy shall not be accorded to them, saith YHWH of hosts.

3 And in those days a whirlwind carried me off from the earth, and set me down at the end of the heavens.

4 And there I saw another vision, the dwelling-places of the holy, and the resting-places of the righteous.

5 Here mine eyes saw their dwellings with His righteous angels, and their resting-places with the holy. And they petitioned and interceded and prayed for the children of men, and righteousness flowed before them as water, and mercy like dew upon the earth: thus it is amongst them for ever and ever.

6 And in that place mine eyes saw the Elect One of righteousness and of faith, and righteousness shall prevail in his days, and the righteous and elect shall be without number before Him for ever and ever.

7 And I saw his dwelling-place under the wings of YHWH of hosts. And

all the righteous and elect before Him shall be strong as fiery lights, and their mouth shall be full of blessing, and their lips extol the name of YHWH of hosts, and righteousness before Him shall never fail, and uprightness shall never fail before Him.

8 There I wished to dwell, and my spirit longed for that dwelling-place: and there heretofore hath been my portion, for so has it been established concerning me before YHWH of hosts.

9 In those days I praised and extolled the name of YHWH of hosts with blessings and praises, because He hath destined me for blessing and glory according to the good pleasure of YHWH of hosts.

10 For a long time my eyes regarded that place, and I blessed Him and praised Him, saying: Blessed is He, and may He be blessed from the beginning and for evermore.

11 And before Him there is no ceasing. He knows before the world was created what is for ever and what will be from generation unto generation.

12 Those who sleep not bless Thee: they stand before Thy glory and bless, praise, and extol, saying: Holy, holy, holy, is YHWH of hosts: He filleth the earth with spirits.

13 And here my eyes saw all those who sleep not: they stand before Him and bless and say: Blessed be Thou, and blessed be the name of YHWH for ever and ever.

14 And my face was changed; for I could no longer behold.

## Chapter 40

1 And after that I saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, I saw a multitude beyond number and reckoning, who stood before YHWH of hosts.

2 And on the four sides of YHWH of hosts I saw four presences, different from those that sleep not, and I learnt their names: for the angel that went with me made known to me their names, and showed me all the hidden things.

3 And I heard the voices of those four presences as they uttered praises before the Lord of glory.

4 The first voice blesses YHWH of hosts for ever and ever.

5 And the second voice I heard blessing the Elect One and the elect ones who hang upon YHWH of hosts.

6 And the third voice I heard pray and intercede for those who dwell on the earth and supplicate in the name of YHWH of hosts.

7 And I heard the fourth voice fending off the Satans and forbidding them to come before YHWH of hosts to accuse them who dwell on the earth.

8 After that I asked the angel of peace who went with me, who showed me

everything that is hidden: Who are these four presences which I have seen and whose words I have heard and written down?

9 And he said to me: This first is Michael, the merciful and long-suffering: and the second, who is set over all the diseases and all the wounds of the children of men, is Raphael: and the third, who is set over all the powers, is Gabriel: and the fourth, who is set over the repentance unto hope of those who inherit eternal life, is named Phanuel.

10 And these are the four angels of YHWH of hosts and the four voices I heard in those days.

## Chapter 41

1 And after that I saw all the secrets of the heavens, and how the kingdom is divided, and how the actions of men are weighed in the balance.

2 And there I saw the mansions of the elect and the mansions of the holy, and mine eyes saw there all the sinners being driven from thence which deny the name of YHWH of hosts, and being dragged off: and they could not abide because of the punishment which proceeds from YHWH of hosts.

3 And there mine eyes saw the secrets of the lightning and of the thunder, and the secrets of the winds, how they are divided to blow over the earth, and the secrets of the clouds and dew, and there I saw from whence they proceed in that place and from whence they saturate the dusty earth.

4 And there I saw closed chambers out of which the winds are divided, the chamber of the hail and winds, the chamber of the mist, and of the clouds, and the cloud thereof hovers over the earth from the beginning of the world.

5 And I saw the chambers of the sun and moon, whence they proceed and whither they come again, and their glorious return, and how one is superior to the other, and their stately orbit, and how they do not leave their orbit, and they add nothing to their orbit and they take nothing from it, and they keep faith with each other, in accordance with the oath by which they are bound together.

6 And first the sun goes forth and traverses his path according to the commandment of YHWH of hosts, and mighty is His name for ever and ever.

7 And after that I saw the hidden and the visible path of the moon, and she accomplishes the course of her path in that place by day and by night—the one holding a position opposite to the other before YHWH of hosts. And they give thanks and praise and rest not; for unto them is their thanksgiving rest.

8 For the sun changes oft for a blessing or a curse, and the course of the



path of the moon is light to the righteous and darkness to the sinners in the name of YHWH, who made a separation between the light and the darkness, and divided the spirits of men, and strengthened the spirits of the righteous, in the name of His righteousness.

9 For no angel hinders and no power is able to hinder; for He appoints a judge for them all and He judges them all before Him.

## Chapter 42

1 Wisdom found no place where she might dwell; then a dwelling-place was assigned her in the heavens.

2 Wisdom went forth to make her dwelling among the children of men, and found no dwelling-place: Wisdom returned to her place, and took her seat among the angels.

3 And unrighteousness went forth from her chambers: whom she sought not she found, and dwelt with them, as rain in a desert and dew on a thirsty land.

## Chapter 43

1 And I saw other lightnings and the stars of heaven, and I saw how He called them all by their names and they hearkened unto Him.

2 And I saw how they are weighed in a righteous balance according to their proportions of light: I saw the width of their spaces and the day of their appearing, and how their revolution produces lightning: and I saw their revolution according to the number of the angels, and how they keep faith with each other.

3 And I asked the angel who went with me who showed me what was hidden: What are these?

4 And he said to me: YHWH of hosts hath showed thee their parabolic meaning: these are the names of the holy who dwell on the earth and believe in the name of YHWH of hosts for ever and ever.

## Chapter 44

1 Also another phenomenon I saw in regard to the lightnings: how some of the stars arise and become lightnings and cannot part with their new form.

## Chapter 45

1 And this is the Second Parable concerning those who deny the name of

the dwelling of the holy ones and YHWH of hosts.

2 And into the heaven they shall not ascend, and on the earth they shall not come: such shall be the lot of the sinners who have denied the name of YHWH of hosts, who are thus preserved for the day of suffering and tribulation.

3 On that day Mine Elect One shall sit on the throne of glory and shall try their works, and their places of rest shall be innumerable. And their souls shall grow strong within them when they see Mine Elect Ones, and those who have called upon My glorious name.

4 Then will I cause Mine Elect One to dwell among them. And I will transform the heaven and make it an eternal blessing and light.

5 And I will transform the earth and make it a blessing: and I will cause Mine elect ones to dwell upon it: but the sinners and evil-doers shall not set foot thereon.

6 For I have provided and satisfied with peace My righteous ones and have caused them to dwell before Me: but for the sinners there is judgement impending with Me, so that I shall destroy them from the face of the earth.

## Chapter 46

1 And there I saw One who had a head of days, and His head was white like wool, and with Him was another being whose countenance had the appearance of a man, and his face was full of graciousness, like one of the holy angels.

2 And I asked the angel who went with me and showed me all the hidden things, concerning that Son of Man, who he was, and whence he was, and why he went with the Head of Days?

3 And he answered and said unto me: This is the son of Man who hath righteousness, With whom dwelleth righteousness, and who revealeth all the treasures of that which is hidden, because YHWH of hosts hath chosen him, and whose lot hath the pre-eminence before YHWH of hosts in uprightness for ever.

4 And this Son of Man whom thou hast seen shall raise up the kings and the mighty from their seats, and the strong from their thrones, and shall loosen the reins of the strong, and break the teeth of the sinners.

5 And he shall put down the kings from their thrones and kingdoms because they do not extol and praise Him, nor humbly acknowledge whence the kingdom was bestowed upon them.

6 And he shall put down the countenance of the strong, and shall fill them with shame. And darkness shall be their dwelling, and worms shall be their bed, and they shall have no hope of rising from their beds, because they do not extol the name of YHWH of hosts.

7 And these are they who judge the stars of heaven, and raise their hands against the Most High, and tread upon the earth and dwell upon it. And all their deeds manifest unrighteousness, and their power rests upon their riches, and their faith is in the gods which they have made with their hands, and they deny the name of YHWH of hosts.

8 And they persecute the houses of His congregations, and the faithful who hang upon the name of YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 47

1 And in those days shall have ascended the prayer of the righteous, and the blood of the righteous from the earth before YHWH of hosts.

2 In those days the holy ones who dwell above in the heavens shall unite with one voice and supplicate and pray and praise, and give thanks and bless the name of YHWH of hosts on behalf of the blood of the righteous which has been shed, and that the prayer of the righteous may not be in vain before YHWH of hosts, that judgement may be done unto them, and that they may not have to suffer for ever.

3 In those days I saw the Head of Days when He seated himself upon the throne of His glory, and the books of the living were opened before Him: and all His host which is in heaven above and His counselors stood before Him,

4 and the hearts of the holy were filled with joy; because the number of the righteous had been offered, and the prayer of the righteous had been heard, and the blood of the righteous been required before YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 48

1 And in that place I saw the fountain of righteousness which was inexhaustible: and around it were many fountains of wisdom; and all the thirsty drank of them, and were filled with wisdom, and their dwellings were with the righteous and holy and elect.

2 And at that hour that Son of Man was named In the presence of YHWH of hosts, and his name before the Head of Days.

3 Yea, before the sun and the signs were created, before the stars of the heaven were made, His name was named before YHWH of hosts.

4 He shall be a staff to the righteous whereon to stay themselves and not fall, and he shall be the light of the Gentiles, and the hope of those who are troubled of heart.

5 All who dwell on earth shall fall down and worship before him, and will praise and bless and celebrate with song YHWH of hosts.

6 And for this reason hath he been chosen and hidden before Him, before the creation of the world and for evermore.

7 And the wisdom of YHWH of hosts hath revealed him to the holy and righteous; for he hath preserved the lot of the righteous, because they have hated and despised this world of unrighteousness, and have hated all its works and ways in the name of YHWH of hosts: for in his name they are saved, and according to his good pleasure hath it been in regard to their life.

8 In these days downcast in countenance shall the kings of the earth have become, and the strong who possess the land because of the works of their hands; for on the day of their anguish and affliction they shall not be able to save themselves.

9 And I will give them over into the hands of Mine elect: as straw in the fire so shall they burn before the face of the holy: as lead in the water shall they sink before the face of the righteous, and no trace of them shall any more be found.

10 And on the day of their affliction there shall be rest on the earth, and before them they shall fall and not rise again: and there shall be no one to take them with his hands and raise them: for they have denied YHWH of hosts and His Anointed. The name of YHWH of hosts be blessed.

## Chapter 49

1. For wisdom is poured out like water, and glory faileth not before him for evermore.

2 For he is mighty in all the secrets of righteousness, and unrighteousness shall disappear as a shadow, and have no continuance; because the Elect One standeth before YHWH of hosts, and his glory is for ever and ever, and his might unto all generations.

3 And in him dwells the spirit of wisdom, and the spirit which gives insight, and the spirit of understanding and of might, and the spirit of those who have fallen asleep in righteousness.

4 And he shall judge the secret things, and none shall be able to utter a lying word before him; for he is the Elect One before YHWH of hosts according to His good pleasure.

## Chapter 50

1 And in those days a change shall take place for the holy and elect, and the light of days shall abide upon them, and glory and honour shall turn to the holy,

2 On the day of affliction on which evil shall have been treasured up

against the sinners. And the righteous shall be victorious in the name of YHWH of hosts: and He will cause the others to witness this that they may repent and forgo the works of their hands.

3 They shall have no honour through the name of YHWH of hosts, yet through His name shall they be saved, and YHWH of hosts will have compassion on them, for His compassion is great.

4 And He is righteous also in His judgement, and in the presence of His glory unrighteousness also shall not maintain itself: at His judgement the unrepentant shall perish before Him.

5 And from henceforth I will have no mercy on them, saith YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 51

1 And in those days shall the earth also give back that which has been entrusted to it, and Sheol also shall give back that which it has received, and hell shall give back that which it owes.

2 And he shall choose the righteous and holy from among them: for the day has drawn nigh that they should be saved.

3 And the Elect One shall in those days sit on My throne, and his mouth shall pour forth all the secrets of wisdom and counsel: for YHWH of hosts hath given them to him and hath glorified him.

4 And in those days shall the mountains leap like rams, and the hills also shall skip like lambs satisfied with milk, and the faces of all the angels in heaven shall be lighted up with joy.

5 For in those days the Elect One shall arise, and the earth shall rejoice, and the righteous shall dwell upon it, and the elect shall walk thereon.

## Chapter 52

1 And after those days in that place where I had seen all the visions of that which is hidden- for I had been carried off in a whirlwind and they had borne me towards the west.

2 There mine eyes saw all the secret things of heaven that shall be, a mountain of iron, and a mountain of copper, and a mountain of silver, and a mountain of gold, and a mountain of soft metal, and a mountain of lead.

3 And I asked the angel who went with me, saying, What things are these which I have seen in secret?

4 And he said unto me: All these things which thou hast seen shall serve the dominion of His Anointed that he may be potent and mighty on the earth.

5 And that angel of peace answered, saying unto me: Wait a little, and there shall be revealed unto thee all the secret things which surround YHWH of hosts.

6 And these mountains which thine eyes have seen, the mountain of iron, and the mountain of copper, and the mountain of silver, and the mountain of gold, and the mountain of soft metal, and the mountain of lead, all these shall be in the presence of the Elect One as wax: before the fire, and like the water which streams down from above upon those mountains, and they shall become powerless before his feet.

7 And it shall come to pass in those days that none shall be saved, either by gold or by silver, and none be able to escape.

8 And there shall be no iron for war, nor shall one clothe oneself with a breastplate. Bronze shall be of no service, and tin shall be of no service and shall not be esteemed, and lead shall not be desired.

9 And all these things shall be denied and destroyed from the surface of the earth, when the Elect One shall appear before the face of YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 53

1 There mine eyes saw a deep valley with open mouths, and all who dwell on the earth and sea and islands shall bring to him gifts and presents and tokens of homage, but that deep valley shall not become full.

2 And their hands commit lawless deeds, and the sinners devour all whom they lawlessly oppress: yet the sinners shall be destroyed before the face of YHWH of hosts, and they shall be banished from off the face of His earth, and they shall perish for ever and ever.

3 For I saw all the angels of punishment abiding there and preparing all the instruments of Satan.

4 And I asked the angel of peace who went with me: For whom are they preparing these instruments?

5 And he said unto me: They prepare these for the kings and the mighty of this earth, that they may thereby be destroyed.

6 And after this the Righteous and Elect One shall cause the house of his congregation to appear: henceforth they shall be no more hindered in the name of YHWH of hosts.

7 And these mountains shall not stand as the earth before his righteousness, but the hills shall be as a fountain of water, and the righteous shall have rest from the oppression of sinners.

## Chapter 54

- 1 And I looked and turned to another part of the earth, and saw there a deep valley with burning fire.
- 2 And they brought the kings and the mighty, and began to cast them into this deep valley.
- 3 And there mine eyes saw how they made these their instruments, iron chains of immeasurable weight.
- 4 And I asked the angel of peace who went with me, saying: For whom are these chains being prepared?
- 5 And he said unto me: These are being prepared for the hosts of Azazel, so that they may take them and cast them into the abyss of complete condemnation, and they shall cover their jaws with rough stones as YHWH of hosts commanded.
- 6 And Michael, and Gabriel, and Raphael, and Phanuel shall take hold of them on that great day, and cast them on that day into the burning furnace, that YHWH of hosts may take vengeance on them for their unrighteousness in becoming subject to Satan and leading astray those who dwell on the earth.
- 7 And in those days shall punishment come from YHWH of hosts, and he will open all the chambers of waters which are above the heavens, and of the fountains which are beneath the earth.
- 8 And all the waters shall be joined with the waters: that which is above the heavens is the agent, and the water which is beneath the earth is the recipient.
- 9 And they shall destroy all who dwell on the earth and those who dwell under the ends of the heaven.
- 10 And when they have recognized their unrighteousness which they have wrought on the earth, then by these shall they perish.

## Chapter 55

- 1 And after that the Head of Days repented and said: In vain have I destroyed all who dwell on the earth.
- 2 And He sware by His great name: Henceforth I will not do so to all who dwell on the earth, and I will set a sign in the heaven: and this shall be a pledge of good faith between Me and them for ever, so long as heaven is above the earth. And this is in accordance with My command.
- 3 When I have desired to take hold of them by the hand of the angels on the day of tribulation and pain because of this, I will cause My chastisement and My wrath to abide upon them, saith God, YHWH of hosts.
- 4 Ye mighty kings who dwell on the earth, ye shall have to behold Mine Elect One, how he sits on the throne of glory and judges Azazel, and all

his associates, and all his hosts in the name of YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 56

1 And I saw there the hosts of the angels of punishment going, and they held scourges and chains of iron and bronze.

2 And I asked the angel of peace who went with me, saying: To whom are these who hold the scourges going?

3 And he said unto me: To their elect and beloved ones, that they may be cast into the chasm of the abyss of the valley.

4 And then that valley shall be filled with their elect and beloved, and the days of their lives shall be at an end, and the days of their leading astray shall not thenceforward be reckoned.

5 And in those days the angels shall return and hurl themselves to the east upon the Parthians and Medes: they shall stir up the kings, so that a spirit of unrest shall come upon them, and they shall rouse them from their thrones, that they may break forth as lions from their lairs, and as hungry wolves among their flocks.

6 And they shall go up and tread under foot the land of His elect ones, and the land of His elect ones shall be before them a threshing-floor and a highway.

7 But the city of my righteous shall be a hindrance to their horses. And they shall begin to fight among themselves, and their right hand shall be strong against themselves, and a man shall not know his brother, nor a son his father or his mother, till there be no number of the corpses through their slaughter, and their punishment be not in vain.

8 In those days Sheol shall open its jaws, and they shall be swallowed up therein and their destruction shall be at an end; Sheol shall devour the sinners in the presence of the elect.

## Chapter 57

1 And it came to pass after this that I saw another host of wagons, and men riding thereon, and coming on the winds from the east, and from the west to the south.

2 And the noise of their wagons was heard, and when this turmoil took place the holy ones from heaven remarked it, and the pillars of the earth were moved from their place, and the sound thereof was heard from the one end of heaven to the other, in one day.

3 And they shall all fall down and worship YHWH of hosts. And this is the end of the second Parable.



## Chapter 58

1 And I began to speak the third Parable concerning the righteous and elect.

2 Blessed are ye, ye righteous and elect, for glorious shall be your lot.

3 And the righteous shall be in the light of the sun. And the elect in the light of eternal life: the days of their life shall be unending, and the days of the holy without number.

4 And they shall seek the light and find righteousness with YHWH of hosts: there shall be peace to the righteous in the name of the Eternal Lord.

5 And after this it shall be said to the holy in heaven that they should seek out the secrets of righteousness, the heritage of faith: for it has become bright as the sun upon earth, and the darkness is past.

6 And there shall be a light that never endeth, and to a limit of days they shall not come, for the darkness shall first have been destroyed, and the light established before YHWH of hosts, and the light of uprightness established for ever before YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 59

1 In those days mine eyes saw the secrets of the lightnings, and of the lights, and the judgements they execute: and they lighten for a blessing or a curse as YHWH of hosts willeth.

2 And there I saw the secrets of the thunder, and how when it resounds above in the heaven, the sound thereof is heard, and he caused me to see the judgements executed on the earth, whether they be for well-being and blessing, or for a curse according to the word of YHWH of hosts.

3 And after that all the secrets of the lights and lightnings were shown to me, and they lighten for blessing and for satisfying.

## Chapter 60

1 In the year five hundred, in the seventh month, on the fourteenth day of the month in the life of Enoch. In that Parable I saw how a mighty quaking made the heaven of heavens to quake, and the host of the Most High, and the angels, a thousand thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, were disquieted with a great disquiet.

2 And the Head of Days sat on the throne of His glory, and the angels and the righteous stood around Him.

3 And a great trembling seized me, and fear took hold of me, and my loins gave way, and dissolved were my reins, and I fell upon my face.

4 And Michael sent another angel from among the holy ones and he raised me up, and when he had raised me up my spirit returned; for I had not been able to endure the look of this host, and the commotion and the quaking of the heaven.

5 And Michael said unto me: Why art thou disquieted with such a vision? Until this day lasted the day of His mercy; and He hath been merciful and long-suffering towards those who dwell on the earth.

6 And when the day, and the power, and the punishment, and the judgement come, which YHWH of hosts hath prepared for those who worship not the righteous law, and for those who deny the righteous judgement, and for those who take His name in vain- that day is prepared, for the elect a covenant, but for sinners an inquisition.

7 And on that day were two monsters parted, a female monster named Leviathan, to dwell in the abysses of the ocean over the fountains of the waters.

8 But the male is named Behemoth, who occupied with his breast a waste wilderness named Duidain, on the east of the garden where the elect and righteous dwell, where my grandfather was taken up, the seventh from Adam, the first man whom YHWH of hosts created.

9 And I besought the other angel that he should show me the might of those monsters, how they were parted on one day and cast, the one into the abysses of the sea, and the other unto the dry land of the wilderness.

10 And he said to me: Thou son of man, herein thou dost seek to know what is hidden.

11 And the other angel who went with me and showed me what was hidden told me what is first and last in the heaven in the height, and beneath the earth in the depth, and at the ends of the heaven, and on the foundation of the heaven.

12 And the chambers of the winds, and how the winds are divided, and how they are weighed, and how the portals of the winds are reckoned, each according to the power of the wind, and the power of the lights of the moon, and according to the power that is fitting: and the divisions of the stars according to their names, and how all the divisions are divided.

13 And the thunders according to the places where they fall, and all the divisions that are made among the lightnings that it may lighten, and their host that they may at once obey.

14 For the thunder has places of rest which are assigned to it while it is waiting for its peal; and the thunder and lightning are inseparable, and although not one and undivided, they both go together through the spirit and separate not.

15 For when the lightning lightens, the thunder utters its voice, and the spirit enforces a pause during the peal, and divides equally between them;

for the treasury of their peals is like the sand, and each one of them as it peals is held in with a bridle, and turned back by the power of the spirit, and pushed forward according to the many quarters of the earth.

16 And the spirit of the sea is masculine and strong, and according to the might of his strength he draws it back with a rein, and in like manner it is driven forward and disperses amid all the mountains of the earth.

17 And the spirit of the hoar-frost is his own angel, and the spirit of the hail is a good angel.

18 And the spirit of the snow has forsaken his chambers on account of his strength- there is a special spirit therein, and that which ascends from it is like smoke, and its name is frost.

19 And the spirit of the mist is not united with them in their chambers, but it has a special chamber; for its course is glorious both in light and in darkness, and in winter and in summer, and in its chamber is an angel.

20 And the spirit of the dew has its dwelling at the ends of the heaven, and is connected with the chambers of the rain, and its course is in winter and summer: and its clouds and the clouds of the mist are connected, and the one gives to the other.

21 And when the spirit of the rain goes forth from its chamber, the angels come and open the chamber and lead it out, and when it is diffused over the whole earth it unites with the water on the earth. And whensoever it unites with the water on the earth.

22 For the waters are for those who dwell on the earth; for they are nourishment for the earth from the Most High who is in heaven: therefore there is a measure for the rain, and the angels take it in charge.

23 And these things I saw towards the Garden of the Righteous.

24 And the angel of peace who was with me said to me: These two monsters are prepared to be fed, according to the greatness of God, that the punishments from God be not in vain, and sons will be killed with their mothers, and children with their fathers.

25 When the punishment of YHWH of hosts shall rest upon them, it shall rest in order that the punishment of YHWH of hosts may not come, in vain, and it shall slay the children with their mothers and the children with their fathers. Afterwards the judgement shall take place according to His mercy and His patience.

## Chapter 61

1 And I saw in those days how long cords were given to those angels, and they took to themselves wings and flew, and they went towards the north.

2 And I asked the angel, saying unto him: Why have those angels taken these cords and gone off? And he said unto me: They have gone to

measure.

3 And the angel who went with me said unto me: These shall bring the measures of the righteous, and the ropes of the righteous to the righteous, that they may stay themselves on the name of YHWH of hosts for ever and ever.

4 The elect shall begin to dwell with the elect, and those are the measures which shall be given to faith and which shall strengthen righteousness.

5 And these measures shall reveal all the secrets of the depths of the earth, and those who have been destroyed by the desert, and those who have been devoured by the beasts, and those who have been devoured by the fish of the sea, that they may return and stay themselves on the day of the Elect One; for none shall be destroyed before YHWH of hosts, and none can be destroyed.

6 And all who dwell above in the heaven received a command and power and one voice and one light like unto fire.

7 And that One with their first words they blessed, and extolled and lauded with wisdom, and they were wise in utterance and in the spirit of life.

8 And YHWH of hosts placed the Elect one on the throne of glory. And he shall judge all the works of the holy above in the heaven, and in the balance shall their deeds be weighed.

9 And when he shall lift up his countenance to judge their secret ways according to the word of the name of YHWH of hosts, and their path according to the way of the righteous judgement of YHWH of hosts, then shall they all with one voice speak and bless, and glorify and extol and sanctify the name of YHWH of hosts.

10 And He will summon all the host of the heavens, and all the holy ones above, and the host of God, the Cherubim, Seraphim, and Ophanim, and all the angels of power, and all the angels of principalities, and the Elect One, and the other powers on the earth and over the water.

11 On that day shall raise one voice, and bless and glorify and exalt in the spirit of faith, and in the spirit of wisdom, and in the spirit of patience, and in the spirit of mercy, and in the spirit of judgement and of peace, and in the spirit of goodness, and shall all say with one voice: Blessed is He, and may the name of YHWH of hosts be blessed for ever and ever.

12 All who sleep not above in heaven shall bless Him: all the holy ones who are in heaven shall bless Him, and all the elect who dwell in the garden of life: and every spirit of light who is able to bless, and glorify, and extol, and hallow Thy blessed name, and all flesh shall beyond measure glorify and bless Thy name for ever and ever.

13 For great is the mercy of YHWH of hosts, and He is long-suffering, and all His works and all that He has created He has revealed to the righteous and elect in the name of YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 62

1 And thus YHWH commanded the kings and the mighty and the exalted, and those who dwell on the earth, and said: Open your eyes and lift up your horns if ye are able to recognize the Elect One.

2 And YHWH of hosts seated him on the throne of His glory, and the spirit of righteousness was poured out upon him, and the word of his mouth slays all the sinners, and all the unrighteous are destroyed from before his face.

3 And there shall stand up in that day all the kings and the mighty, and the exalted and those who hold the earth, and they shall see and recognize How he sits on the throne of his glory, and righteousness is judged before him, and no lying word is spoken before him.

4 Then shall pain come upon them as on a woman in travail, and she has pain in bringing forth, when her child enters the mouth of the womb, and she has pain in bringing forth.

5 And one portion of them shall look on the other, and they shall be terrified, and they shall be downcast of countenance, and pain shall seize them, when they see that Son of Man Sitting on the throne of his glory.

6 And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth shall bless and glorify and extol him who rules over all, who was hidden.

7 For from the beginning the Son of Man was hidden, and the Most High preserved him in the presence of His might, and revealed him to the elect.

8 And the congregation of the elect and holy shall be sown, and all the elect shall stand before him on that day.

9 And all the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who rule the earth shall fall down before him on their faces, and worship and set their hope upon that Son of Man, and petition him and supplicate for mercy at his hands.

10 Nevertheless that YHWH of hosts will so press them that they shall hastily go forth from His presence, and their faces shall be filled with shame, and the darkness grow deeper on their faces.

11 And He will deliver them to the angels for punishment, to execute vengeance on them because they have oppressed His children and His elect,

12 and they shall be a spectacle for the righteous and for His elect: they shall rejoice over them, because the wrath of YHWH of hosts resteth upon them, and His sword is drunk with their blood.

13 And the righteous and elect shall be saved on that day, and they shall never thenceforward see the face of the sinners and unrighteous.

14 And YHWH of hosts will abide over them, and with that Son of Man

shall they eat and lie down and rise up for ever and ever.

15 And the righteous and elect shall have risen from the earth, and ceased to be of downcast countenance. And they shall have been clothed with garments of glory,

16 and these shall be the garments of life from YHWH of hosts: and your garments shall not grow old, nor your glory pass away before YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 63

1 In those days shall the mighty and the kings who possess the earth implore Him to grant them a little respite from His angels of punishment to whom they were delivered, that they might fall down and worship before YHWH of hosts, and confess their sins before Him.

2 And they shall bless and glorify YHWH of hosts, and say: Blessed is YHWH of hosts and the Lord of kings, and the Lord of the mighty and the Lord of the rich, and the Lord of glory and the Lord of wisdom,

3 and splendid in every secret thing is Thy power from generation to generation, and Thy glory for ever and ever: deep are all Thy secrets and innumerable, and Thy righteousness is beyond reckoning.

4 We have now learnt that we should glorify and bless the Lord of kings and Him who is king over all kings.

5 And they shall say: Would that we had rest to glorify and give thanks and confess our faith before His glory!

6 And now we long for a little rest but find it not: we follow hard upon and obtain it not: and light has vanished from before us, and darkness is our dwelling-place for ever and ever:

7 for we have not believed before Him, nor glorified the name of YHWH of hosts, nor glorified our Lord, but our hope was in the sceptre of our kingdom, and in our glory.

8 And in the day of our suffering and tribulation He saves us not, and we find no respite for confession that our Lord is true in all His works, and in His judgements and His justice, and His judgements have no respect of persons.

9 And we pass away from before His face on account of our works, and all our sins are reckoned up in righteousness.

10 Now they shall say unto themselves: Our souls are full of unrighteous gain, but it does not prevent us from descending from the midst thereof into the burden of Sheol.

11 And after that their faces shall be filled with darkness and shame before that Son of Man, and they shall be driven from his presence, and the sword shall abide before his face in their midst.

12 Thus spake YHWH of hosts: This is the ordinance and judgement with respect to the mighty and the kings and the exalted and those who possess the earth before YHWH of hosts.

## Chapter 64

1 And other forms I saw hidden in that place.

2 I heard the voice of the angel saying: These are the angels who descended to the earth, and revealed what was hidden to the children of men and seduced the children of men into committing sin.

## Chapter 65

1 And in those days Noah saw the earth that it had sunk down and its destruction was nigh.

2 And he arose from thence and went to the ends of the earth, and cried aloud to his grandfather Enoch: and Noah said three times with an embittered voice: Hear me, hear me, hear me.

3 And I said unto him: Tell me what it is that is falling out on the earth that the earth is in such evil plight and shaken, lest perchance I shall perish with it?

4 And thereupon there was a great commotion, on the earth, and a voice was heard from heaven, and I fell on my face.

5 And Enoch my grandfather came and stood by me, and said unto me: Why hast thou cried unto me with a bitter cry and weeping?

6 And a command has gone forth from the presence of YHWH concerning those who dwell on the earth that their ruin is accomplished because they have learnt all the secrets of the angels, and all the violence of the Satans, and all their powers- the most secret ones- and all the power of those who practice sorcery, and the power of witchcraft, and the power of those who make molten images for the whole earth:

7 and how silver is produced from the dust of the earth, and how soft metal originates in the earth.

8 For lead and tin are not produced from the earth like the first: it is a fountain that produces them, and an angel stands therein, and that angel is pre-eminent.

9 And after that my grandfather Enoch took hold of me by my hand and raised me up, and said unto me: Go, for I have asked YHWH of hosts as touching this commotion on the earth.

10 And He said unto me: Because of their unrighteousness their judgement has been determined upon and shall not be withheld by Me for ever. Because of the sorceries which they have searched out and learnt, the

earth and those who dwell upon it shall be destroyed.

11 And these- they have no place of repentance for ever, because they have shown them what was hidden, and they are the damned: but as for thee, my son, YHWH of hosts knows that thou art pure, and guiltless of this reproach concerning the secrets.

12 And He has destined thy name to be among the holy, and will preserve thee amongst those who dwell on the earth, and has destined thy righteous seed both for kingship and for great honours, and from thy seed shall proceed a fountain of the righteous and holy without number for ever.

## Chapter 66

1 And after that he showed me the angels of punishment who are prepared to come and let loose all the powers of the waters which are beneath in the earth in order to bring judgement and destruction on all who abide and dwell on the earth.

2 And YHWH of hosts gave commandment to the angels who were going forth, that they should not cause the waters to rise but should hold them in check; for those angels were over the powers of the waters.

3 And I went away from the presence of Enoch.

## Chapter 67

1 And in those days the word of God came unto me, and He said unto me: Noah, thy lot has come up before Me, a lot without blame, a lot of love and uprightness.

2 And now the angels are making a wooden building, and when they have completed that task I will place My hand upon it and preserve it, and there shall come forth from it the seed of life, and a change shall set in so that the earth will not remain without inhabitant.

3 And I will make fast thy seed before me for ever and ever, and I will spread abroad those who dwell with thee: it shall not be unfruitful on the face of the earth, but it shall be blessed and multiply on the earth in the name of YHWH.

4 And He will imprison those angels, who have shown unrighteousness, in that burning valley which my grandfather Enoch had formerly shown to me in the west among the mountains of gold and silver and iron and soft metal and tin.

5 And I saw that valley in which there was a great convulsion and a convulsion of the waters.

6 And when all this took place, from that fiery molten metal and from the convulsion thereof in that place, there was produced a smell of sulphur,



and it was connected with those waters, and that valley of the angels who had led astray mankind burned beneath that land.

7 And through its valleys proceed streams of fire, where these angels are punished who had led astray those who dwell upon the earth.

8 But those waters shall in those days serve for the kings and the mighty and the exalted, and those who dwell on the earth, for the healing of the body, but for the punishment of the spirit; now their spirit is full of lust, that they may be punished in their body, for they have denied YHWH of hosts and see their punishment daily, and yet believe not in His name.

9 And in proportion as the burning of their bodies becomes severe, a corresponding change shall take place in their spirit for ever and ever; for before YHWH of hosts none shall utter an idle word.

10 For the judgement shall come upon them, because they believe in the lust of their body and deny the Spirit of YHWH.

11 And those same waters will undergo a change in those days; for when those angels are punished in these waters, these water-springs shall change their temperature, and when the angels ascend, this water of the springs shall change and become cold.

12 And I heard Michael answering and saying: This judgement wherewith the angels are judged is a testimony for the kings and the mighty who possess the earth.

13 Because these waters of judgement minister to the healing of the body of the kings and the lust of their body; therefore they will not see and will not believe that those waters will change and become a fire which burns for ever.

## Chapter 68

1 And after that my grandfather Enoch gave me the teaching of all the secrets in the book in the Parables which had been given to him, and he put them together for me in the words of the book of the Parables.

2 And on that day Michael answered Raphael and said: The power of the spirit transports and makes me to tremble because of the severity of the judgement of the secrets, the judgement of the angels: who can endure the severe judgement which has been executed, and before which they melt away?

3 And Michael answered again, and said to Raphael: Who is he whose heart is not softened concerning it, and whose reins are not troubled by this word of judgement that has gone forth upon them because of those who have thus led them out?

4 And it came to pass when he stood before YHWH of hosts, Michael said thus to Raphael: I will not take their part under the eye of YHWH; for

YHWH of hosts has been angry with them because they do as if they were YHWH.

5 Therefore all that is hidden shall come upon them for ever and ever; for neither angel nor man shall have his portion in it, but alone they have received their judgement for ever and ever.

## Chapter 69

1 And after this judgement they shall terrify and make them to tremble because they have shown this to those who dwell on the earth.

2 And behold the names of those angels: the first of them is Semjaza, the second Artaqifa, and the third Armen, the fourth Kokabel, the fifth Turael, the sixth Rumjal, the seventh Danjal, the eighth Neqael, the ninth Baraqel, the tenth Azazel, the eleventh Armaros, the twelfth Batarjal, the thirteenth Busasejal, the fourteenth Hananel, the fifteenth Turel, and the sixteenth Simapesiel, the seventeenth Jetrel, the eighteenth Tumael, the nineteenth Turel, the twentieth Rumael, the twenty-first Azazel.

3 And these are the chiefs of their angels and their names, and their chief ones over hundreds and over fifties and over tens.

4 The name of the first Jejon: that is, the one who led astray all the sons of God, and brought them down to the earth, and led them astray through the daughters of men.

5 And the second was named Asbeel: he imparted to the holy sons of God evil counsel, and led them astray so that they defiled their bodies with the daughters of men.

6 And the third was named Gadreel: he it is who showed the children of men all the blows of death, and he led astray Eve, and showed the weapons of death to the sons of men the shield and the coat of mail, and the sword for battle, and all the weapons of death to the children of men.

7 And from his hand they have proceeded against those who dwell on the earth from that day and for evermore.

8 And the fourth was named Penemue: he taught the children of men the bitter and the sweet, and he taught them all the secrets of their wisdom.

9 And he instructed mankind in writing with ink and paper, and thereby many sinned from eternity to eternity and until this day.

10 For men were not created for such a purpose, to give confirmation to their good faith with pen and ink.

11 For men were created exactly like the angels, to the intent that they should continue pure and righteous, and death, which destroys everything, could not have taken hold of them, but through this their knowledge they are perishing, and through this power it is consuming me.

12 And the fifth was named Kasdeja: this is he who showed the children of

men all the wicked smitings of spirits and demons, and the smitings of the embryo in the womb, that it may pass away, and the smitings of the soul, and the bites of the serpent, and the smitings which befall through the noontide heat, the son of the serpent named Tabaa'et.

13 And this is the task of Kasbeel, the chief of the oath which he showed to the holy ones when he dwelt high above in glory, and its name is Biqa.

14 This aangel requested Michael to show him the hidden name, that he might enunciate it in the oath, so that those might quake before that name and oath who revealed all that was in secret to the children of men.

15 And this is the power of this oath, for it is powerful and strong, and he placed this oath Akae in the hand of Michael.

16 And these are the secrets of this oath. And they are strong through his oath: and the heaven was suspended before the world was created, and for ever.

17 And through it the earth was founded upon the water, and from the secret recesses of the mountains come beautiful waters, from the creation of the world and unto eternity.

18 And through that oath the sea was created, and as its foundation He set for it the sand against the time of its anger, and it dare not pass beyond it from the creation of the world unto eternity.

19 And through that oath are the depths made fast, and abide and stir not from their place from eternity to eternity.

20 And through that oath the sun and moon complete their course, and deviate not from their ordinance from eternity to eternity.

21 And through that oath the stars complete their course, and He calls them by their names, and they answer Him from eternity to eternity.

22 And in like manner the spirits of the water, and of the winds, and of all zephyrs, and their paths from all the quarters of the winds.

23 And there are preserved the voices of the thunder and the light of the lightnings: and there are preserved the chambers of the hail and the chambers of the hoarfrost, and the chambers of the mist, and the chambers of the rain and the dew.

24 And all these believe and give thanks before YHWH of hosts, and glorify Him with all their power, and their food is in every act of thanksgiving: they thank and glorify and extol the name of YHWH of hosts for ever and ever.

25 And this oath is mighty over them and through it they are preserved and their paths are preserved, and their course is not destroyed.

26 And there was great joy amongst them, and they blessed and glorified and extolled because the name of that Son of Man had been revealed unto them.

27 And he sat on the throne of his glory, and the sum of judgement was

given unto the Son of Man, and he caused the sinners to pass away and be destroyed from off the face of the earth, and those who have led the world astray.

28 With chains shall they be bound, and in their assemblage-place of destruction shall they be imprisoned, and all their works vanish from the face of the earth.

29 And from henceforth there shall be nothing corruptible; for that Son of Man has appeared, and has seated himself on the throne of his glory, and all evil shall pass away before his face, and the word of that Son of Man shall go forth and be strong before YHWH of hosts.

30 This is the Third Parable of Enoch.

## Chapter 70

1 And it came to pass after this that his name during his lifetime was raised aloft to that Son of Man and to YHWH of hosts from amongst those who dwell on the earth.

2 And he was raised aloft on the chariots of the spirit and his name vanished among them.

3 And from that day I was no longer numbered amongst them: and he set me between the two winds, between the North and the West, where the angels took the cords to measure for me the place for the elect and righteous.

4 And there I saw the first fathers and the righteous who from the beginning dwell in that place.

## Chapter 71

1 And it came to pass after this that my spirit was translated and it ascended into the heavens: and I saw the holy sons of God. They were stepping on flames of fire: their garments were white, and their faces shone like snow.

2 And I saw two streams of fire, and the light of that fire shone like hyacinth, and I fell on my face before YHWH of hosts.

3 And the angel Michael, one of the archangels, seized me by my right hand, and lifted me up and led me forth into all the secrets, and he showed me all the secrets of righteousness.

4 And he showed me all the secrets of the ends of the heaven, and all the chambers of all the stars, and all the luminaries, whence they proceed before the face of the holy ones.

5 And he translated my spirit into the heaven of heavens, and I saw there as it were a structure built of crystals, and between those crystals tongues

of living fire.

6 And my spirit saw the girdle which girt that house of fire, and on its four sides were streams full of living fire, and they girt that house.

7 And round about were Seraphim, Cherubim, and Ophanim: and these are they who sleep not and guard the throne of His glory.

8 And I saw angels who could not be counted, a thousand thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand, encircling that house. And Michael, and Raphael, and Gabriel, and Phanuel, and the holy angels who are above the heavens, go in and out of that house.

9 And they came forth from that house, and Michael and Gabriel, Raphael and Phanuel, and many holy angels without number.

10 And with them the Head of Days, his head white and pure as wool, and His raiment indescribable.

11 And I fell on my face, and my whole body became relaxed, and my spirit was transfigured; and I cried with a loud voice, with the spirit of power, and blessed and glorified and extolled.

12 And these blessings which went forth out of my mouth were well pleasing before that Head of Days.

13 And that Head of Days came with Michael and Gabriel, Raphael and Phanuel, thousands and ten thousands of angels without number.

14 And he came to me and greeted me with His voice, and said unto me: This is the Son of Man who is born unto righteousness; and righteousness abides over him, and the righteousness of the Head of Days forsakes him not.

15 And he said unto me: He proclaims unto thee peace in the name of the world to come; for from hence has proceeded peace since the creation of the world, and so shall it be unto thee for ever and for ever and ever.

16 And all shall walk in his ways since righteousness never forsaketh him: with him will be their dwelling-places, and with him their heritage, and they shall not be separated from him for ever and ever and ever.

17 And so there shall be length of days with that Son of Man, and the righteous shall have peace and an upright way in the name of YHWH of hosts for ever and ever.

## Chapter 72

1 The book of the courses of the luminaries of the heaven, the relations of each, according to their classes, their dominion and their seasons, according to their names and places of origin, and according to their months, which Uriel, the holy angel, who was with me, who is their guide, showed me; and he showed me all their laws exactly as they are, and how it is with regard to all the years of the world and unto eternity, till the new

creation is accomplished which dureth till eternity.

2 And this is the first law of the luminaries: the luminary the Sun has its rising in the eastern portals of the heaven, and its setting in the western portals of the heaven.

3 And I saw six portals in which the sun rises, and six portals in which the sun sets and the moon rises and sets in these portals, and the leaders of the stars and those whom they lead: six in the east and six in the west, and all following each other in accurately corresponding order: also many windows to the right and left of these portals.

4 And first there goes forth the great luminary, named the Sun, and his circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and he is quite filled with illuminating and heating fire.

5 The chariot on which he ascends, the wind drives, and the sun goes down from the heaven and returns through the north in order to reach the east, and is so guided that he comes to the appropriate portal and shines in the face of the heaven.

6 In this way he rises in the first month in the great portal, which is the fourth those six portals in the east.

7 And in that fourth portal from which the sun rises in the first month are twelve window-openings, from which proceed a flame when they are opened in their season.

8 When the sun rises in the heaven, he comes forth through that fourth portal thirty mornings in succession, and sets accurately in the fourth portal in the west of the heaven.

9 And during this period the day becomes daily longer and the night nightly shorter to the thirtieth morning.

10 On that day the day is longer than the night by a ninth part, and the day amounts exactly to ten parts and the night to eight parts.

11 And the sun rises from that fourth portal, and sets in the fourth and returns to the fifth portal of the east thirty mornings, and rises from it and sets in the fifth portal.

12 And then the day becomes longer by two parts and amounts to eleven parts, and the night becomes shorter and amounts to seven parts.

13 And it returns to the east and enters into the sixth portal, and rises and sets in the sixth portal one-and-thirty mornings on account of its sign.

14 On that day the day becomes longer than the night, and the day becomes double the night, and the day becomes twelve parts, and the night is shortened and becomes six parts.

15 And the sun mounts up to make the day shorter and the night longer, and the sun returns to the east and enters into the sixth portal, and rises from it and sets thirty mornings.

16 And when thirty mornings are accomplished, the day decreases by

exactly one part, and becomes eleven parts, and the night seven.

17 And the sun goes forth from that sixth portal in the west, and goes to the east and rises in the fifth portal for thirty mornings, and sets in the west again in the fifth western portal.

18 On that day the day decreases by two parts, and amounts to ten parts and the night to eight parts.

19 And the sun goes forth from that fifth portal and sets in the fifth portal of the west, and rises in the fourth portal for one-and-thirty mornings on account of its sign, and sets in the west.

20 On that day the day is equalized with the night, and becomes of equal length, and the night amounts to nine parts and the day to nine parts.

21 And the sun rises from that portal and sets in the west, and returns to the east and rises thirty mornings in the third portal and sets in the west in the third portal.

22 And on that day the night becomes longer than the day, and night becomes longer than night, and day shorter than day till the thirtieth morning, and the night amounts exactly to ten parts and the day to eight parts.

23 And the sun rises from that third portal and sets in the third portal in the west and returns to the east, and for thirty mornings rises in the second portal in the east, and in like manner sets in the second portal in the west of the heaven.

24 And on that day the night amounts to eleven parts and the day to seven parts.

25 And the sun rises on that day from that second portal and sets in the west in the second portal, and returns to the east into the first portal for one-and-thirty mornings, and sets in the first portal in the west of the heaven.

26 And on that day the night becomes longer and amounts to the double of the day: and the night amounts exactly to twelve parts and the day to six.

27 And the sun has therewith traversed the divisions of his orbit and turns again on those divisions of his orbit, and enters that portal thirty mornings and sets also in the west opposite to it.

28 And on that night has the night decreased in length by a ninth part, and the night has become eleven parts and the day seven parts.

29 And the sun has returned and entered into the second portal in the east, and returns on those his divisions of his orbit for thirty mornings, rising and setting.

30 And on that day the night decreases in length, and the night amounts to ten parts and the day to eight.

31 And on that day the sun rises from that portal, and sets in the west, and

returns to the east, and rises in the third portal for one-and-thirty mornings, and sets in the west of the heaven.

32 On that day the night decreases and amounts to nine parts, and the day to nine parts, and the night is equal to the day and the year is exactly as to its days three hundred and sixty-four.

33 And the length of the day and of the night, and the shortness of the day and of the night arise- through the course of the sun these distinctions are made

34 So it comes that its course becomes daily longer, and its course nightly shorter.

35 And this is the law and the course of the sun, and his return as often as he returns sixty times and rises, that is, the great luminary which is named the sun, for ever and ever.

36 And that which thus rises is the great luminary, and is so named according to its appearance, according as YHWH commanded.

37 As he rises, so he sets and decreases not, and rests not, but runs day and night, and his light is sevenfold brighter than that of the moon; but as regards size they are both equal.

## Chapter 73

1 And after this law I saw another law dealing with the smaller luminary, which is named the Moon.

2 And her circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and her chariot in which she rides is driven by the wind, and light is given to her in definite measure.

3 And her rising and setting change every month: and her days are like the days of the sun, and when her light is full it amounts to the seventh part of the light of the sun.

4 And thus she rises. And her first phase in the east comes forth on the thirtieth morning: and on that day she becomes visible, and constitutes for you the first phase of the moon on the thirtieth day together with the sun in the portal where the sun rises.

5 And the one half of her goes forth by a seventh part, and her whole circumference is empty, without light, with the exception of one-seventh part of it, and the fourteenth part of her light.

6 And when she receives one-seventh part of the half of her light, her light amounts to one-seventh part and the half thereof.

7 And she sets with the sun, and when the sun rises the moon rises with him and receives the half of one part of light, and in that night in the beginning of her morning, in the commencement of the lunar day, the moon sets with the sun, and is invisible that night with the fourteen parts



and the half of one of them.

8 And she rises on that day with exactly a seventh part, and comes forth and recedes from the rising of the sun, and in her remaining days she becomes bright in the remaining thirteen parts.

## Chapter 74

1 And I saw another course, a law for her, and how according to that law she performs her monthly revolution.

2 And all these Uriel, the holy angel who is the leader of them all, showed to me, and their positions, and I wrote down their positions as he showed them to me, and I wrote down their months as they were, and the appearance of their lights till fifteen days were accomplished.

3 In single seventh parts she accomplishes all her light in the east, and in single seventh parts accomplishes all her darkness in the west.

4 And in certain months she alters her settings, and in certain months she pursues her own peculiar course.

5 In two months the moon sets with the sun: in those two middle portals the third and the fourth.

6 She goes forth for seven days, and turns about and returns again through the portal where the sun rises, and accomplishes all her light: and she recedes from the sun, and in eight days enters the sixth portal from which the sun goes forth.

7 And when the sun goes forth from the fourth portal she goes forth seven days, until she goes forth from the fifth and turns back again in seven days into the fourth portal and accomplishes all her light: and she recedes and enters into the first portal in eight days.

8 And she returns again in seven days into the fourth portal from which the sun goes forth.

9 Thus I saw their position- how the moons rose and the sun set in those days.

10 And if five years are added together the sun has an overplus of thirty days, and all the days which accrue to it for one of those five years, when they are full, amount to three hundred and sixty-four days.

11 And the overplus of the sun and of the stars amounts to six days: in five years six days every year come to thirty days: and the moon falls behind the sun and stars to the number of thirty days.

12 And the sun and the stars bring in all the years exactly, so that they do not advance or delay their position by a single day unto eternity; but complete the years with perfect justice in three hundred and sixty-four days.

13 In three years there are one thousand and ninety-two days, and in five

years one thousand eight hundred and twenty days, so that in eight years there are two thousand nine hundred and twelve days.

14 (For the moon alone the days amount in three years to one thousand and sixty-two days, and in five years she falls fifty days behind: to the sum of one thousand seven hundred and seventy, and one thousand and sixty-two, there are days to be added.)

15 And in five years there are one thousand seven hundred and seventy days, so that for the moon the days in eight years amount to two thousand eight hundred and thirty-two days.

16 For in eight years she falls behind to the amount of eighty days, all the days she falls behind in eight years are eighty.

17 And the year is accurately completed in conformity with their world-stations and the stations of the sun, which rise from the portals through which it the sun rises and sets thirty days.

## Chapter 75

1 And the leaders of the heads of the thousands, who are placed over the whole creation and over all the stars, have also to do with the four intercalary days, being inseparable from their office, according to the reckoning of the year, and these render service on the four days which are not reckoned in the reckoning of the year.

2 And owing to them men go wrong therein, for those luminaries truly render service on the world-stations, one in the first portal, one in the third portal of the heaven, one in the fourth portal, and one in the sixth portal, and the exactness of the year is accomplished through its separate three hundred and sixty-four stations.

3 For the signs and the times and the years and the days the angel Uriel showed to me, whom the Lord of glory hath set for ever over all the luminaries of the heaven, in the heaven and in the world, that they should rule on the face of the heaven and be seen on the earth, and be leaders for the day and the night, that is, the sun, moon, and stars, and all the ministering creatures which make their revolution in all the chariots of the heaven.

4 In like manner twelve doors Uriel showed me, open in the circumference of the sun's chariot in the heaven, through which the rays of the sun break forth: and from them is warmth diffused over the earth, when they are opened at their appointed seasons.

5 And for the winds and the spirit of the dew when they are opened, standing open in the heavens at the ends.

6 As for the twelve portals in the heaven, at the ends of the earth, out of which go forth the sun, moon, and stars, and all the works of heaven in the

east and in the west.

7 There are many windows open to the left and right of them, and one window at its appointed season produces warmth, corresponding, as these do, to those doors from which the stars come forth according as He has commanded them, and wherein they set corresponding to their number.

8 And I saw chariots in the heaven, running in the world, above those portals in which revolve the stars that never set.

9 And one is larger than all the rest, and it is that that makes its course through the entire world.

## Chapter 76

1 And at the ends of the earth I saw twelve portals open to all the quarters of the heaven, from which the winds go forth and blow over the earth.

2 Three of them are open on the face (the east) of the heavens, and three in the west, and three on the right (the south) of the heaven, and three on the left (the north).

3 And the three first are those of the east, and three are of the north, and three after those on the left of the south, and three of the west.

4 Through four of these come winds of blessing and prosperity, and from those eight come hurtful winds: when they are sent, they bring destruction on all the earth and on the water upon it, and on all who dwell thereon, and on everything which is in the water and on the land.

5 And the first wind from those portals, called the east wind, comes forth through the first portal which is in the east, inclining towards the south: from it come forth desolation, drought, heat, and destruction.

6 And through the second portal in the middle comes what is fitting, and from it there come rain and fruitfulness and prosperity and dew; and through the third portal which lies toward the north come cold and drought.

7 And after these come forth the south winds through three portals: through the first portal of them inclining to the east comes forth a hot wind.

8 And through the middle portal next to it there come forth fragrant smells, and dew and rain, and prosperity and health.

9 And through the third portal lying to the west come forth dew and rain, locusts and desolation.

10 And after these the north winds: from the seventh portal in the east come dew and rain, locusts and desolation.

11 And from the middle portal come in a direct direction health and rain and dew and prosperity; and through the third portal in the west come cloud and hoar-frost, and snow and rain, and dew and locusts.

12 And after these four are the west winds: through the first portal adjoining the north come forth dew and hoar-frost, and cold and snow and frost.

13 And from the middle portal come forth dew and rain, and prosperity and blessing; and through the last portal which adjoins the south come forth drought and desolation, and burning and destruction.

14 And the twelve portals of the four quarters of the heaven are therewith completed, and all their laws and all their plagues and all their benefactions have I shown to thee, my son Methuselah.

## Chapter 77

1 And the first quarter is called the east, because it is the first: and the second, the south, because the Most High will descend there, yea, there in quite a special sense will He who is blessed for ever descend.

2 And the west quarter is named the diminished, because there all the luminaries of the heaven wane and go down.

3 And the fourth quarter, named the north, is divided into three parts: the first of them is for the dwelling of men: and the second contains seas of water, and the abysses and forests and rivers, and darkness and clouds; and the third part contains the garden of righteousness.

4 I saw seven high mountains, higher than all the mountains which are on the earth: and thence comes forth hoar-frost, and days, seasons, and years pass away.

5 I saw seven rivers on the earth larger than all the rivers: one of them coming from the west pours its waters into the Great Sea.

6 And these two come from the north to the sea and pour their waters into the Erythraean Sea in the east.

7 And the remaining four come forth on the side of the north to their own sea, two of them to the Erythraean Sea, and two into the Great Sea and discharge themselves there, and some say: into the desert.

8 Seven great islands I saw in the sea and in the mainland: two in the mainland and five in the Great Sea.

## Chapter 78

1 And the names of the sun are the following: the first Orjares, and the second Tomas.

2 And the moon has four names: the first name is Asonja, the second Ebla, the third Benase, and the fourth Erae.

3 These are the two great luminaries: their circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and the size of the circumference of both is

alike.

4 In the circumference of the sun there are seven portions of light which are added to it more than to the moon, and in definite measures it is transferred till the seventh portion of the sun is exhausted.

5 And they set and enter the portals of the west, and make their revolution by the north, and come forth through the eastern portals on the face of the heaven.

6 And when the moon rises one-fourteenth part appears in the heaven: the light becomes full in her: on the fourteenth day she accomplishes her light.

7 And fifteen parts of light are transferred to her till the fifteenth day when her light is accomplished, according to the sign of the year, and she becomes fifteen parts, and the moon grows by the addition of fourteenth parts.

8 And in her waning the moon decreases on the first day to fourteen parts of her light, on the second to thirteen parts of light, on the third to twelve, on the fourth to eleven, on the fifth to ten, on the sixth to nine, on the seventh to eight, on the eighth to seven, on the ninth to six, on the tenth to five, on the eleventh to four, on the twelfth to three, on the thirteenth to two, on the fourteenth to the half of a seventh, and all her remaining light disappears wholly on the fifteenth.

9 And in certain months the month has twenty-nine days and once twenty-eight.

10 And Uriel showed me another law: when light is transferred to the moon, and on which side it is transferred to her by the sun.

11 During all the period during which the moon is growing in her light, she is transferring it to herself when opposite to the sun during fourteen days her light is accomplished in the heaven, and when she is illumined throughout, her light is accomplished full in the heaven.

12 And on the first day she is called the new moon, for on that day the light rises upon her.

13 She becomes full moon exactly on the day when the sun sets in the west, and from the east she rises at night, and the moon shines the whole night through till the sun rises over against her and the moon is seen over against the sun.

14 On the side whence the light of the moon comes forth, there again she wanes till all the light vanishes and all the days of the month are at an end, and her circumference is empty, void of light.

15 And three months she makes of thirty days, and at her time she makes three months of twenty-nine days each, in which she accomplishes her waning in the first period of time, and in the first portal for one hundred and seventy-seven days.

16 And in the time of her going out she appears for three months of thirty

days each, and for three months she appears of twenty-nine each.

17 At night she appears like a man for twenty days each time, and by day she appears like the heaven, and there is nothing else in her save her light.

## Chapter 79

1 And now, my son, I have shown thee everything, and the law of all the stars of the heaven is completed.

2 And he showed me all the laws of these for every day, and for every season of bearing rule, and for every year, and for its going forth, and for the order prescribed to it every month and every week:

3 And the waning of the moon which takes place in the sixth portal: for in this sixth portal her light is accomplished, and after that there is the beginning of the waning:

4 and the waning which takes place in the first portal in its season, till one hundred and seventy-seven days are accomplished: reckoned according to weeks, twenty-five weeks and two days.

5 She falls behind the sun and the order of the stars exactly five days in the course of one period, and when this place which thou seest has been traversed.

6 Such is the picture and sketch of every luminary which Uriel the archangel, who is their leader, showed unto me.

## Chapter 80

1 And in those days the angel Uriel answered and said to me: Behold, I have shown thee everything, Enoch, and I have revealed everything to thee that thou shouldst see this sun and this moon, and the leaders of the stars of the heaven and all those who turn them, their tasks and times and departures.

2 And in the days of the sinners the years shall be shortened, and their seed shall be tardy on their lands and fields, and all things on the earth shall alter, and shall not appear in their time: and the rain shall be kept back and the heaven shall withhold it.

3 And in those times the fruits of the earth shall be backward, and shall not grow in their time, and the fruits of the trees shall be withheld in their time.

4 And the moon shall alter her order, and not appear at her time.

5 And in those days the sun shall be seen and he shall journey in the evening on the extremity of the great chariot in the west, and shall shine more brightly than accords with the order of light.

6 And many chiefs of the stars shall transgress the order prescribed. And

these shall alter their orbits and tasks, and not appear at the seasons prescribed to them.

7 And the whole order of the stars shall be concealed from the sinners, and the thoughts of those on the earth shall err concerning them, and they shall be altered from all their ways, yea, they shall err and take them to be gods.

8 And evil shall be multiplied upon them, and punishment shall come upon them So as to destroy all.

## Chapter 81

1 And he said unto me: Observe, Enoch, these heavenly tablets, and read what is written thereon, and mark every individual fact.

2 And I observed the heavenly tablets, and read everything which was written thereon and understood everything, and read the book of all the deeds of mankind, and of all the children of flesh that shall be upon the earth to the remotest generations.

3 And forthwith I blessed the great Lord the King of glory for ever, in that He has made all the works of the world, and I extolled YHWH because of His patience, and blessed Him because of the children of men.

4 And after that I said: Blessed is the man who dies in righteousness and goodness, concerning whom there is no book of unrighteousness written, and against whom no day of judgement shall be found.

5 And those seven holy ones brought me and placed me on the earth before the door of my house, and said to me: Declare everything to thy son Methuselah, and show to all thy children that no flesh is righteous in the sight of YHWH, for He is their Creator.

6 One year we will leave thee with thy son, till thou givest thy last commands, that thou mayest teach thy children and record it for them, and testify to all thy children; and in the second year they shall take thee from their midst.

7 Let thy heart be strong, for the good shall announce righteousness to the good; the righteous with the righteous shall rejoice, and shall offer congratulation to one another.

8 But the sinners shall die with the sinners, and the apostate go down with the apostate.

9 And those who practice righteousness shall die on account of the deeds of men, and be taken away on account of the doings of the godless.

10 And in those days they ceased to speak to me, and I came to my people, blessing the Lord of the world.

## Chapter 82

1 And now, my son Methuselah, all these things I am recounting to thee and writing down for thee, and I have revealed to thee everything, and given thee books concerning all these: so preserve, my son Methuselah, the books from thy father's hand, and see that thou deliver them to the generations of the world.

2 I have given Wisdom to thee and to thy children, and thy children that shall be to thee, that they may give it to their children for generations, this wisdom namely that passeth their thought.

3 And those who understand it shall not sleep, but shall listen with the ear that they may learn this wisdom, and it shall please those that eat thereof better than good food.

4 Blessed are all the righteous, blessed are all those who walk in the way of righteousness and sin not as the sinners, in the reckoning of all their days in which the sun traverses the heaven, entering into and departing from the portals for thirty days with the heads of thousands of the order of the stars, together with the four which are intercalated which divide the four portions of the year, which lead them and enter with them four days.

5 Owing to them men shall be at fault and not reckon them in the whole reckoning of the year: yea, men shall be at fault, and not recognize them accurately.

6 For they belong to the reckoning of the year and are truly recorded thereon for ever, one in the first portal and one in the third, and one in the fourth and one in the sixth, and the year is completed in three hundred and sixty-four days.

7 And the account thereof is accurate and the recorded reckoning thereof exact; for the luminaries, and months and festivals, and years and days, has Uriel shown and revealed to me, to whom the Lord of the whole creation of the world hath subjected the host of heaven.

8 And he has power over night and day in the heaven to cause the light to give light to men- sun, moon, and stars, and all the powers of the heaven which revolve in their circular chariots.

9 And these are the orders of the stars, which set in their places, and in their seasons and festivals and months.

10 And these are the names of those who lead them, who watch that they enter at their times, in their orders, in their seasons, in their months, in their periods of dominion, and in their positions.

11 Their four leaders who divide the four parts of the year enter first; and after them the twelve leaders of the orders who divide the months; and for the three hundred and sixty days there are heads over thousands who divide the days; and for the four intercalary days there are the leaders which sunder the four parts of the year.



12 And these heads over thousands are intercalated between leader and leader, each behind a station, but their leaders make the division. And these are the names of the leaders who divide the four parts of the year which are ordained: Milkiel, Helemmek, Melejal, and Narel.

13 And the names of those who lead them: Adnarel, Ijasusael, and Elomeel- these three follow the leaders of the orders, and there is one that follows the three leaders of the orders which follow those leaders of stations that divide the four parts of the year.

15 In the beginning of the year Melkejal rises first and rules, who is named Tamaini and Zahay, and all the days of his dominion whilst he bears rule are ninety-one days.

16 And these are the signs of the days which are to be seen on earth in the days of his dominion: sweat, and heat, and calms; and all the trees bear fruit, and leaves are produced on all the trees, and the harvest of wheat, and the rose-flowers, and all the flowers which come forth in the field, but the trees of the winter season become withered.

17 And these are the names of the leaders which are under them: Berkael, Zelebsel, and another who is added a head of a thousand, called Hilujaseph: and the days of the dominion of this leader are at an end.

18 The next leader after him is Helemmek, whom they call the shining sun, and all the days of his light are ninety-one days.

19 And these are the signs of his days on the earth: glowing heat and dryness, and the trees ripen their fruits and produce all their fruits ripe and ready, and the sheep pair and become pregnant, and all the fruits of the earth are gathered in, and everything that is in the fields, and the winepress: these things take place in the days of his dominion.

20 These are the names, and the orders, and the leaders of those heads of thousands: Gidajal, Keel, and Heel, and the name of the head of a thousand which is added to them, Asfael: and the days of his dominion are at an end.

## Chapter 83

1 And now, my son Methuselah, I will show thee all my visions which I have seen, recounting them before thee.

2 Two visions I saw before I took a wife, and the one was quite unlike the other: the first when I was learning to write: the second before I took thy mother, when I saw a terrible vision. And regarding them I prayed to YHWH.

3 I had laid me down in the house of my grandfather Mahalalel, when I saw in a vision how the heaven collapsed and was borne off and fell to the earth.

4 And when it fell to the earth I saw how the earth was swallowed up in a great abyss, and mountains were suspended on mountains, and hills sank down on hills, and high trees were rent from their stems, and hurled down and sunk in the abyss.

5 And thereupon a word fell into my mouth, and I lifted up my voice to cry aloud, and said: The earth is destroyed.

6 And my grandfather Mahalalel waked me as I lay near him, and said unto me: Why dost thou cry so, my son, and why dost thou make such lamentation?

7 And I recounted to him the whole vision which I had seen, and he said unto me: A terrible thing hast thou seen, my son, and of grave moment is thy dream-vision as to the secrets of all the sin of the earth: it must sink into the abyss and be destroyed with a great destruction.

8 And now, my son, arise and make petition to the Lord of glory, since thou art a believer, that a remnant may remain on the earth, and that He may not destroy the whole earth.

9 My son, from heaven all this will come upon the earth, and upon the earth there will be great destruction.

10 After that I arose and prayed and implored and besought, and wrote down my prayer for the generations of the world, and I will show everything to thee, my son Methuselah.

11 And when I had gone forth below and seen the heaven, and the sun rising in the east, and the moon setting in the west, and a few stars, and the whole earth, and everything as He had known it in the beginning, then I blessed the Lord of judgement and extolled Him because He had made the sun to go forth from the windows of the east, and he ascended and rose on the face of the heaven, and set out and kept traversing the path shown unto him.

## Chapter 84

1 And I lifted up my hands in righteousness and blessed the Holy and Great One, and spake with the breath of my mouth, and with the tongue of flesh, which God has made for the children of the flesh of men, that they should speak therewith, and He gave them breath and a tongue and a mouth that they should speak therewith:

2 Blessed be Thou, O Lord, King, great and mighty in Thy greatness, Lord of the whole creation of the heaven, King of kings and God of the whole world. And Thy power and kingship and greatness abide for ever and ever, and throughout all generations Thy dominion; and all the heavens are Thy throne for ever, and the whole earth Thy footstool for ever and ever.

3 For Thou hast made and Thou rulest all things, and nothing is too hard

for Thee, wisdom departs not from the place of Thy throne, nor turns away from Thy presence. and Thou knowest and seest and hearest everything, and there is nothing hidden from Thee, for Thou seest everything.

4 And now the angels of Thy heavens are guilty of trespass, and upon the flesh of men abideth Thy wrath until the great day of judgement.

5 And now, O God and Lord and Great King, I implore and beseech Thee to fulfil my prayer, to leave me a posterity on earth, and not destroy all the flesh of man, and make the earth without inhabitant, so that there should be an eternal destruction.

6 And now, my Lord, destroy from the earth the flesh which has aroused Thy wrath, but the flesh of righteousness and uprightness establish as a plant of the eternal seed, and hide not Thy face from the prayer of Thy servant, O Lord.

## Chapter 85

1 And after this I saw another dream, and I will show the whole dream to thee, my son.

2 And Enoch lifted up his voice and spake to his son Methuselah: To thee, my son, will I speak: hear my words- incline thine ear to the dream-vision of thy father.

3 Before I took thy mother Edna, I saw in a vision on my bed, and behold a bull came forth from the earth, and that bull was white; and after it came forth a heifer, and along with this latter came forth two bulls, one of them black and the other red.

4 And that black bull gored the red one and pursued him over the earth, and thereupon I could no longer see that red bull.

5 But that black bull grew and that heifer went with him, and I saw that many oxen proceeded from him which resembled and followed him.

6 And that cow, that first one, went from the presence of that first bull in order to seek that red one, but found him not, and lamented with a great lamentation over him and sought him.

7 And I looked till that first bull came to her and quieted her, and from that time onward she cried no more.

8 And after that she bore another white bull, and after him she bore many bulls and black cows.

9 And I saw in my sleep that white bull likewise grow and become a great white bull, and from Him proceeded many white bulls, and they resembled him. And they began to beget many white bulls, which resembled them, one following the other, even many.

## Chapter 86

1 And again I saw with mine eyes as I slept, and I saw the heaven above, and behold a star fell from heaven, and it arose and eat and pastured amongst those oxen.

2 And after that I saw the large and the black oxen, and behold they all changed their stalls and pastures and their cattle, and began to live with each other.

3 And again I saw in the vision, and looked towards the heaven, and behold I saw many stars descend and cast themselves down from heaven to that first star, and they became bulls amongst those cattle and pastured with them amongst them.

4 And I looked at them and saw, and behold they all let out their privy members, like horses, and began to cover the cows of the oxen, and they all became pregnant and bare elephants, camels, and asses.

5 And all the oxen feared them and were affrighted at them, and began to bite with their teeth and to devour, and to gore with their horns.

6 And they began, moreover, to devour those oxen; and behold all the children of the earth began to tremble and quake before them and to flee from them.

## Chapter 87

1 And again I saw how they began to gore each other and to devour each other, and the earth began to cry aloud.

2 And I raised mine eyes again to heaven, and I saw in the vision, and behold there came forth from heaven beings who were like white men: and four went forth from that place and three with them.

3 And those three that had last come forth grasped me by my hand and took me up, away from the generations of the earth, and raised me up to a lofty place, and showed me a tower raised high above the earth, and all the hills were lower.

4 And one said unto me: Remain here till thou seest everything that befalls those elephants, camels, and asses, and the stars and the oxen, and all of them.

## Chapter 88

1 And I saw one of those four who had come forth first, and he seized that first star which had fallen from the heaven, and bound it hand and foot and cast it into an abyss: now that abyss was narrow and deep, and horrible and dark.

2 And one of them drew a sword, and gave it to those elephants and camels and asses: then they began to smite each other, and the whole earth quaked because of them.

3 And as I was beholding in the vision, lo, one of those four who had come forth stoned them from heaven, and gathered and took all the great stars whose privy members were like those of horses, and bound them all hand and foot, and cast them in an abyss of the earth.

## Chapter 89

1 And one of those four went to that white bull and instructed him in a secret, without his being terrified: he was born a bull and became a man, and built for himself a great vessel and dwelt thereon; and three bulls dwelt with him in that vessel and they were covered in.

2 And again I raised mine eyes towards heaven and saw a lofty roof, with seven water torrents thereon, and those torrents flowed with much water into an enclosure.

3 And I saw again, and behold fountains were opened on the surface of that great enclosure, and that water began to swell and rise upon the surface, and I saw that enclosure till all its surface was covered with water.

4 And the water, the darkness, and mist increased upon it; and as I looked at the height of that water, that water had risen above the height of that enclosure, and was streaming over that enclosure, and it stood upon the earth.

5 And all the cattle of that enclosure were gathered together until I saw how they sank and were swallowed up and perished in that water.

6 But that vessel floated on the water, while all the oxen and elephants and camels and asses sank to the bottom with all the animals, so that I could no longer see them, and they were not able to escape, but perished and sank into the depths.

7 And again I saw in the vision till those water torrents were removed from that high roof, and the chasms of the earth were levelled up and other abysses were opened.

8 Then the water began to run down into these, till the earth became visible; but that vessel settled on the earth, and the darkness retired and light appeared.

9 But that white bull which had become a man came out of that vessel, and the three bulls with him, and one of those three was white like that bull, and one of them was red as blood, and one black: and that white bull departed from them.

10 And they began to bring forth beasts of the field and birds, so that there arose different genera: lions, tigers, wolves, dogs, hyenas, wild boars,

foxes, squirrels, swine, falcons, vultures, kites, eagles, and ravens; and among them was born a white bull.

11 And they began to bite one another; but that white bull which was born amongst them begat a wild ass and a white bull with it, and the wild asses multiplied.

12 But that bull which was born from him begat a black wild boar and a white sheep; and the former begat many boars, but that sheep begat twelve sheep.

13 And when those twelve sheep had grown, they gave up one of them to the asses, and those asses again gave up that sheep to the wolves, and that sheep grew up among the wolves.

14 And YHWH brought the eleven sheep to live with it and to pasture with it among the wolves: and they multiplied and became many flocks of sheep.

15 And the wolves began to fear them, and they oppressed them until they destroyed their little ones, and they cast their young into a river of much water: but those sheep began to cry aloud on account of their little ones, and to complain unto their Lord.

16 And a sheep which had been saved from the wolves fled and escaped to the wild asses; and I saw the sheep how they lamented and cried, and besought their Lord with all their might, till that Lord of the sheep descended at the voice of the sheep from a lofty abode, and came to them and pastured them.

17 And He called that sheep which had escaped the wolves, and spake with it concerning the wolves that it should admonish them not to touch the sheep.

18 And the sheep went to the wolves according to the word of YHWH, and another sheep met it and went with it, and the two went and entered together into the assembly of those wolves, and spake with them and admonished them not to touch the sheep from henceforth.

19 And thereupon I saw the wolves, and how they oppressed the sheep exceedingly with all their power; and the sheep cried aloud.

20 And YHWH came to the sheep and they began to smite those wolves: and the wolves began to make lamentation; but the sheep became quiet and forthwith ceased to cry out.

21 And I saw the sheep till they departed from amongst the wolves; but the eyes of the wolves were blinded, and those wolves departed in pursuit of the sheep with all their power.

22 And the Lord of the sheep went with them, as their leader, and all His sheep followed Him: and his face was dazzling and glorious and terrible to behold.

23 But the wolves began to pursue those sheep till they reached a sea of

water.

24 And that sea was divided, and the water stood on this side and on that before their face, and their Lord led them and placed Himself between them and the wolves.

25 And as those wolves did not yet see the sheep, they proceeded into the midst of that sea, and the wolves followed the sheep, and those wolves ran after them into that sea.

26 And when they saw the Lord of the sheep, they turned to flee before His face, but that sea gathered itself together, and became as it had been created, and the water swelled and rose till it covered those wolves.

27 And I saw till all the wolves who pursued those sheep perished and were drowned.

28 But the sheep escaped from that water and went forth into a wilderness, where there was no water and no grass; and they began to open their eyes and to see; and I saw the Lord of the sheep pasturing them and giving them water and grass, and that sheep going and leading them.

29 And that sheep ascended to the summit of that lofty rock, and the Lord of the sheep sent it to them.

30 And after that I saw the Lord of the sheep who stood before them, and His appearance was great and terrible and majestic, and all those sheep saw Him and were afraid before His face.

31 And they all feared and trembled because of Him, and they cried to that sheep with them which was amongst them: We are not able to stand before our Lord or to behold Him.

32 And that sheep which led them again ascended to the summit of that rock, but the sheep began to be blinded and to wander from the way which he had showed them, but that sheep wot not thereof.

33 And the Lord of the sheep was wrathful exceedingly against them, and that sheep discovered it, and went down from the summit of the rock, and came to the sheep, and found the greatest part of them blinded and fallen away.

34 And when they saw it they feared and trembled at its presence, and desired to return to their folds.

35 And that sheep took other sheep with it, and came to those sheep which had fallen away, and began to slay them; and the sheep feared its presence, and thus that sheep brought back those sheep that had fallen away, and they returned to their folds.

36 And I saw in this vision till that sheep became a man and built a house for the Lord of the sheep, and placed all the sheep in that house.

37 And I saw till this sheep which had met that sheep which led them fell asleep: and I saw till all the great sheep perished and little ones arose in their place, and they came to a pasture, and approached a stream of water.

38 Then that sheep, their leader which had become a man, withdrew from them and fell asleep, and all the sheep sought it and cried over it with a great crying.

39 And I saw till they left off crying for that sheep and crossed that stream of water, and there arose the two sheep as leaders in the place of those which had led them and fallen asleep.

40 And I saw till the sheep came to a goodly place, and a pleasant and glorious land, and I saw till those sheep were satisfied; and that house stood amongst them in the pleasant land.

41 And sometimes their eyes were opened, and sometimes blinded, till another sheep arose and led them and brought them all back, and their eyes were opened.

42 And the dogs and the foxes and the wild boars began to devour those sheep till the Lord of the sheep raised up another sheep, a ram from their midst, which led them.

43 And that ram began to butt on either side those dogs, foxes, and wild boars till he had destroyed them all.

44 And that sheep whose eyes were opened saw that ram, which was amongst the sheep, till it forsook its glory and began to butt those sheep, and trampled upon them, and behaved itself unseemly.

45 And the Lord of the sheep sent the lamb to another lamb and raised it to being a ram and leader of the sheep instead of that ram which had forsaken its glory.

46 And it went to it and spake to it alone, and raised it to being a ram, and made it the prince and leader of the sheep; but during all these things those dogs oppressed the sheep.

47 And the first ram pursued that second ram, and that second ram arose and fled before it; and I saw till those dogs pulled down the first ram.

48 And that second ram arose and led the little sheep. And that ram begat many sheep and fell asleep; and a little sheep became ram in its stead, and became prince and leader of those sheep.

49 And those sheep grew and multiplied; but all the dogs, and foxes, and wild boars feared and fled before it, and that ram butted and killed the wild beasts, and those wild beasts had no longer any power among the sheep and robbed them no more of ought.

50 And that house became great and broad, and it was built for those sheep: and a tower lofty and great was built on the house for the Lord of the sheep, and that house was low, but the tower was elevated and lofty, and the Lord of the sheep stood on that tower and they offered a full table before Him.

51 And again I saw those sheep that they again erred and went many ways, and forsook that their house, and the Lord of the sheep called some from



amongst the sheep and sent them to the sheep, but the sheep began to slay them.

52 And one of them was saved and was not slain, and it sped away and cried aloud over the sheep; and they sought to slay it, but the Lord of the sheep saved it from the sheep, and brought it up to me, and caused it to dwell there.

53 And many other sheep He sent to those sheep to testify unto them and lament over them.

54 And after that I saw that when they forsook the house of YHWH and His tower they fell away entirely, and their eyes were blinded; and I saw the Lord of the sheep how He wrought much slaughter amongst them in their herds until those sheep invited that slaughter and betrayed His place.

55 And He gave them over into the hands of the lions and tigers, and wolves and hyenas, and into the hand of the foxes, and to all the wild beasts, and those wild beasts began to tear in pieces those sheep.

56 And I saw that He forsook that their house and their tower and gave them all into the hand of the lions, to tear and devour them, into the hand of all the wild beasts.

57 And I began to cry aloud with all my power, and to appeal to the Lord of the sheep, and to represent to Him in regard to the sheep that they were devoured by all the wild beasts.

58 But He remained unmoved, though He saw it, and rejoiced that they were devoured and swallowed and robbed, and left them to be devoured in the hand of all the beasts.

59 And He called seventy shepherds, and cast those sheep to them that they might pasture them, and He spake to the shepherds and their companions: Let each individual of you pasture the sheep henceforward, and everything that I shall command you that do ye.

60 And I will deliver them over unto you duly numbered, and tell you which of them are to be destroyed- and them destroy ye. And He gave over unto them those sheep.

61 And He called another and spake unto him: "Observe and mark everything that the shepherds will do to those sheep; for they will destroy more of them than I have commanded them.

62 And every excess and the destruction which will be wrought through the shepherds, record namely how many they destroy according to my command, and how many according to their own caprice: record against every individual shepherd all the destruction he effects.

63 And read out before me by number how many they destroy, and how many they deliver over for destruction, that I may have this as a testimony against them, and know every deed of the shepherds, that I may comprehend and see what they do, whether or not they abide by my

command which I have commanded them.

64 But they shall not know it, and thou shalt not declare it to them, nor admonish them, but only record against each individual all the destruction which the shepherds effect each in his time and lay it all before me.

65 And I saw till those shepherds pastured in their season, and they began to slay and to destroy more than they were bidden, and they delivered those sheep into the hand of the lions.

66 And the lions and tigers eat and devoured the greater part of those sheep, and the wild boars eat along with them; and they burnt that tower and demolished that house.

67 And I became exceedingly sorrowful over that tower because that house of the sheep was demolished, and afterwards I was unable to see if those sheep entered that house.

68 And the shepherds and their associates delivered over those sheep to all the wild beasts, to devour them, and each one of them received in his time a definite number: it was written by the other in a book how many each one of them destroyed of them.

69 And each one slew and destroyed many more than was prescribed; and I began to weep and lament on account of those sheep.

70 And thus in the vision I saw that one who wrote, how he wrote down every one that was destroyed by those shepherds, day by day, and carried up and laid down and showed actually the whole book to the Lord of the sheep- even everything that they had done, and all that each one of them had made away with, and all that they had given over to destruction.

71 And the book was read before the Lord of the sheep, and He took the book from his hand and read it and sealed it and laid it down.

72 And forthwith I saw how the shepherds pastured for twelve hours, and behold three of those sheep turned back and came and entered and began to build up all that had fallen down of that house; but the wild boars tried to hinder them, but they were not able.

73 And they began again to build as before, and they reared up that tower, and it was named the high tower; and they began again to place a table before the tower, but all the bread on it was polluted and not pure.

74 And as touching all this the eyes of those sheep were blinded so that they saw not, and the eyes of their shepherds likewise; and they delivered them in large numbers to their shepherds for destruction, and they trampled the sheep with their feet and devoured them.

75 And the Lord of the sheep remained unmoved till all the sheep were dispersed over the field and mingled with the beasts, and the shepherds did not save them out of the hand of the beasts.

76 And this one who wrote the book carried it up, and showed it and read it before the Lord of the sheep, and implored Him on their account, and

besought Him on their account as he showed Him all the doings of the shepherds, and gave testimony before Him against all the shepherds.

77 And he took the actual book and laid it down beside Him and departed.

## Chapter 90

1 And I saw till that in this manner thirty-five shepherds undertook the pasturing of the sheep, and they severally completed their periods as did the first; and others received them into their hands, to pasture them for their period, each shepherd in his own period.

2 And after that I saw in my vision all the birds of heaven coming, the eagles, the vultures, the kites, the ravens; but the eagles led all the birds; and they began to devour those sheep, and to pick out their eyes and to devour their flesh.

3 And the sheep cried out because their flesh was being devoured by the birds, and as for me I looked and lamented in my sleep over that shepherd who pastured the sheep.

4 And I saw until those sheep were devoured by the dogs and eagles and kites, and they left neither flesh nor skin nor sinew remaining on them till only their bones stood there: and their bones too fell to the earth and the sheep became few.

5 And I saw until that twenty-three had undertaken the pasturing and completed in their several periods fifty-eight times.

6 But behold lambs were borne by those white sheep, and they began to open their eyes and to see, and to cry to the sheep.

7 Yea, they cried to them, but they did not hearken to what they said to them, but were exceedingly deaf, and their eyes were very exceedingly blinded.

8 And I saw in the vision how the ravens flew upon those lambs and took one of those lambs, and dashed the sheep in pieces and devoured them.

9 And I saw till horns grew upon those lambs, and the ravens cast down their horns; and I saw till there sprouted a great horn of one of those sheep, and their eyes were opened.

10 And it looked at them and their eyes opened, and it cried to the sheep, and the rams saw it and all ran to it.

11 And notwithstanding all this those eagles and vultures and ravens and kites still kept tearing the sheep and swooping down upon them and devouring them: still the sheep remained silent, but the rams lamented and cried out.

12 And those ravens fought and battled with it and sought to lay low its horn, but they had no power over it.

13 And I saw till the shepherds and eagles and those vultures and kites

came, and they cried to the ravens that they should break the horn of that ram, and they battled and fought with it, and it battled with them and cried that its help might come.

14 And I saw till that man, who wrote down the names of the shepherds and carried up into the presence of the Lord of the sheep came and helped it and showed it everything: he had come down for the help of that ram.

15 And I saw till the Lord of the sheep came unto them in wrath, and all who saw Him fled, and they all fell into His shadow from before His face.

16 All the eagles and vultures and ravens and kites were gathered together, and there came with them all the sheep of the field, yea, they all came together, and helped each other to break that horn of the ram.

17 And I saw that man, who wrote the book according to the command of YHWH, till he opened that book concerning the destruction which those twelve last shepherds had wrought, and showed that they had destroyed much more than their predecessors, before the Lord of the sheep.

18 And I saw till the Lord of the sheep came unto them and took in His hand the staff of His wrath, and smote the earth, and the earth clave asunder, and all the beasts and all the birds of the heaven fell from among those sheep, and were swallowed up in the earth and it covered them.

19 And I saw till a great sword was given to the sheep, and the sheep proceeded against all the beasts of the field to slay them, and all the beasts and the birds of the heaven fled before their face.

20 And I saw till a throne was erected in the pleasant land, and the Lord of the sheep sat Himself thereon, and the other took the sealed books and opened those books before the Lord of the sheep.

21 And YHWH called those men the seven first white ones, and commanded that they should bring before Him, beginning with the first star which led the way, all the stars whose privy members were like those of horses, and they brought them all before Him.

22 And He said to that man who wrote before Him, being one of those seven white ones, and said unto him: Take those seventy shepherds to whom I delivered the sheep, and who taking them on their own authority slew more than I commanded them.

23 And behold they were all bound, I saw, and they all stood before Him.

24 And the judgement was held first over the stars, and they were judged and found guilty, and went to the place of condemnation, and they were cast into an abyss, full of fire and flaming, and full of pillars of fire.

25 And those seventy shepherds were judged and found guilty, and they were cast into that fiery abyss.

26 And I saw at that time how a like abyss was opened in the midst of the earth, full of fire, and they brought those blinded sheep, and they were all

judged and found guilty and cast into this fiery abyss, and they burned; now this abyss was to the right of that house.

27 And I saw those sheep burning and their bones burning.

28 And I stood up to see till they folded up that old house; and carried off all the pillars, and all the beams and ornaments of the house were at the same time folded up with it, and they carried it off and laid it in a place in the south of the land.

29 And I saw till the Lord of the sheep brought a new house greater and loftier than that first, and set it up in the place of the first which had been folded up: all its pillars were new, and its ornaments were new and larger than those of the first, the old one which He had taken away, and all the sheep were within it.

30 And I saw all the sheep which had been left, and all the beasts on the earth, and all the birds of the heaven, falling down and doing homage to those sheep and making petition to and obeying them in every thing.

31 And thereafter those three who were clothed in white and had seized me by my hand who had taken me up before, and the hand of that ram also seizing hold of me, they took me up and set me down in the midst of those sheep before the judgement took place.

32 And those sheep were all white, and their wool was abundant and clean.

33 And all that had been destroyed and dispersed, and all the beasts of the field, and all the birds of the heaven, assembled in that house, and the Lord of the sheep rejoiced with great joy because they were all good and had returned to His house.

34 And I saw till they laid down that sword, which had been given to the sheep, and they brought it back into the house, and it was sealed before the presence of YHWH, and all the sheep were invited into that house, but it held them not.

35 And the eyes of them all were opened, and they saw the good, and there was not one among them that did not see.

36 And I saw that that house was large and broad and very full.

37 And I saw that a white bull was born, with large horns and all the beasts of the field and all the birds of the air feared him and made petition to him all the time.

38 And I saw till all their generations were transformed, and they all became white bulls; and the first among them became a lamb, and that lamb became a great animal and had great black horns on its head; and the Lord of the sheep rejoiced over it and over all the oxen.

39 And I slept in their midst: and I awoke and saw everything.

40 This is the vision which I saw while I slept, and I awoke and blessed the Lord of righteousness and gave Him glory.

41 Then I wept with a great weeping and my tears stayed not till I could no

longer endure it: when I saw, they flowed on account of what I had seen; for everything shall come and be fulfilled, and all the deeds of men in their order were shown to me.

42 On that night I remembered the first dream, and because of it I wept and was troubled- because I had seen that vision.

## Chapter 91

1 And now, my son Methuselah, call to me all thy brothers and gather together to me all the sons of thy mother; for the word calls me, and the spirit is poured out upon me, that I may show you everything that shall befall you for ever.

2 And there upon Methuselah went and summoned to him all his brothers and assembled his relatives.

3 And he spake unto all the children of righteousness and said: Hear, ye sons of Enoch, all the words of your father, and hearken aright to the voice of my mouth; for I exhort you and say unto you, beloved: love uprightness and walk therein.

4 And draw not nigh to uprightness with a double heart, and associate not with those of a double heart, but walk in righteousness, my sons. And it shall guide you on good paths, and righteousness shall be your companion.

5 For I know that violence must increase on the earth, and a great chastisement be executed on the earth, and all unrighteousness come to an end: yea, it shall be cut off from its roots, and its whole structure be destroyed.

6 And unrighteousness shall again be consummated on the earth, and all the deeds of unrighteousness and of violence and transgression shall prevail in a twofold degree.

7 And when sin and unrighteousness and blasphemy and violence in all kinds of deeds increase, and apostasy and transgression and uncleanness increase, a great chastisement shall come from heaven upon all these, and the holy Lord will come forth with wrath and chastisement to execute judgement on earth.

8 In those days violence shall be cut off from its roots, and the roots of unrighteousness together with deceit, and they shall be destroyed from under heaven.

9 And all the idols of the heathen shall be abandoned, and the temples burned with fire, and they shall remove them from the whole earth, and the heathen shall be cast into the judgement of fire, and shall perish in wrath and in grievous judgement for ever.

10 And the righteous shall arise from their sleep, and wisdom shall arise and be given unto them.

11 And after that the roots of unrighteousness shall be cut off, and the sinners shall be destroyed by the sword, and shall be cut off from the blasphemers in every place, and those who plan violence and those who commit blasphemy shall perish by the sword.

12 And after that there shall be another, the eighth week, that of righteousness, and a sword shall be given to it that a righteous judgement may be executed on the oppressors, and sinners shall be delivered into the hands of the righteous.

13 And at its close they shall acquire houses through their righteousness, and a house shall be built for the Great King in glory for evermore.

14 And after that, in the ninth week, the righteous judgement shall be revealed to the whole world, and all the works of the godless shall vanish from all the earth, and the world shall be written down for destruction, and all mankind shall look to the path of uprightness.

15 And after this, in the tenth week in the seventh part, there shall be the great eternal judgement, in which He will execute vengeance amongst the angels.

16 And the first heaven shall depart and pass away, and a new heaven shall appear, and all the powers of the heavens shall give sevenfold light.

17 And after that there will be many weeks without number for ever, and all shall be in goodness and righteousness and sin shall no more be mentioned for ever.

18 And now I tell you, my sons, and show you the paths of righteousness and the paths of violence. Yea, I will show them to you again, that ye may know what will come to pass.

19 And now, hearken unto me, my sons, and walk in the paths of righteousness, and walk not in the paths of violence; for all who walk in the paths of unrighteousness shall perish for ever.

## Chapter 92

1 The book written by Enoch- Enoch indeed wrote this complete doctrine of wisdom- which is praised of all men and a judge of all the earth, for all my children who shall dwell on the earth. And for the future generations who shall observe uprightness and peace.

2 Let not your spirit be troubled on account of the times; for the Holy and Great One has appointed days for all things.

3 And the righteous one shall arise from sleep, shall arise and walk in the paths of righteousness, and all his path and conversation shall be in eternal goodness and grace.

4 He will be gracious to the righteous and give him eternal uprightness, and He will give him power so that he shall be endowed with goodness and

righteousness. And he shall walk in eternal light.

5 And sin shall perish in darkness for ever, and shall no more be seen from that day for evermore.

## Chapter 93

1 And after that Enoch both gave and began to recount from the books.

2 And Enoch said: Concerning the children of righteousness and concerning the elect of the world, and concerning the plant of uprightness, I will speak these things, yea, I Enoch will declare them unto you, my sons: according to that which appeared to me in the heavenly vision, and which I have known through the word of the holy angels, and have learnt from the heavenly tablets.

3 And Enoch began to recount from the books and said: I was born the seventh in the first week, while judgement and righteousness still endured.

4 And after me there shall arise in the second week great wickedness, and deceit shall have sprung up; and in it there shall be the first end. And in it a man shall be saved; and after it is ended unrighteousness shall grow up, and a law shall be made for the sinners.

5 And after that in the third week at its close a man shall be elected as the plant of righteous judgement, and his posterity shall become the plant of righteousness for evermore.

6 And after that in the fourth week, at its close, visions of the holy and righteous shall be seen, and a law for all generations and an enclosure shall be made for them.

7 And after that in the fifth week, at its close, the house of glory and dominion shall be built for ever.

8 And after that in the sixth week all who live in it shall be blinded, and the hearts of all of them shall godlessly forsake wisdom. And in it a man shall ascend; and at its close the house of dominion shall be burnt with fire, and the whole race of the chosen root shall be dispersed.

9 And after that in the seventh week shall an apostate generation arise, and many shall be its deeds, and all its deeds shall be apostate.

10 And at its close shall be elected the elect righteous of the eternal plant of righteousness, to receive sevenfold instruction concerning all His creation.

11 For who is there of all the children of men that is able to hear the voice of the Holy One without being troubled? And who can think His thoughts? and who is there that can behold all the works of heaven?

12 And how should there be one who could behold the heaven, and who is there that could understand the things of heaven and see a soul or a spirit and could tell thereof, or ascend and see all their ends and think them or



do like them?

13 And who is there of all men that could know what is the breadth and the length of the earth, and to whom has been shown the measure of all of them?

14 Or is there any one who could discern the length of the heaven and how great is its height, and upon what it is founded, and how great is the number of the stars, and where all the luminaries rest?

## Chapter 94

1 And now I say unto you, my sons, love righteousness and walk therein; for the paths of righteousness are worthy of acceptance, but the paths of unrighteousness shall suddenly be destroyed and vanish.

2 And to certain men of a generation shall the paths of violence and of death be revealed, and they shall hold themselves afar from them, and shall not follow them.

3 And now I say unto you the righteous: walk not in the paths of wickedness, nor in the paths of death, and draw not nigh to them, lest ye be destroyed.

4 But seek and choose for yourselves righteousness and an elect life, and walk in the paths of peace, and ye shall live and prosper.

5 And hold fast my words in the thoughts of your hearts, and suffer them not to be effaced from your hearts; for I know that sinners will tempt men to evilly-entreat wisdom, so that no place may be found for her, and no manner of temptation may minish.

6 Woe to those who build unrighteousness and oppression and lay deceit as a foundation; for they shall be suddenly overthrown, and they shall have no peace.

7 Woe to those who build their houses with sin; for from all their foundations shall they be overthrown, and by the sword shall they fall. And those who acquire gold and silver in judgement suddenly shall perish.

8 Woe to you, ye rich, for ye have trusted in your riches, and from your riches shall ye depart, because ye have not remembered the Most High in the days of your riches.

9 Ye have committed blasphemy and unrighteousness, and have become ready for the day of slaughter, and the day of darkness and the day of the great judgement.

10 Thus I speak and declare unto you: He who hath created you will overthrow you, and for your fall there shall be no compassion, and your Creator will rejoice at your destruction.

11 And your righteous ones in those days shall be a reproach to the sinners and the godless.

## Chapter 95

1 Oh that mine eyes were a cloud of waters, that I might weep over you, and pour down my tears as a cloud of waters: that so I might rest from my trouble of heart!

2 Who has permitted you to practice reproaches and wickedness? And so judgement shall overtake you, sinners.

3 Fear not the sinners, ye righteous; for again will YHWH deliver them into your hands, that ye may execute judgement upon them according to your desires.

4 Woe to you who fulminate anathemas which cannot be reversed: healing shall therefore be far from you because of your sins.

5 Woe to you who requite your neighbour with evil; for ye shall be requited according to your works.

6 Woe to you, lying witnesses, and to those who weigh out injustice, for suddenly shall ye perish.

7 Woe to you, sinners, for ye persecute the righteous; for ye shall be delivered up and persecuted because of injustice, and heavy shall its yoke be upon you.

## Chapter 96

1 Be hopeful, ye righteous; for suddenly shall the sinners perish before you, and ye shall have lordship over them according to your desires.

2 And in the day of the tribulation of the sinners, your children shall mount and rise as eagles, and higher than the vultures will be your nest, and ye shall ascend and enter the crevices of the earth, and the clefts of the rock for ever as conies before the unrighteous, and the sirens shall sigh because of you-and weep.

3 Wherefore fear not, ye that have suffered; for healing shall be your portion, and a bright light shall enlighten you, and the voice of rest ye shall hear from heaven.

4 Woe unto you, ye sinners, for your riches make you appear like the righteous, but your hearts convict you of being sinners, and this fact shall be a testimony against you for a memorial of your evil deeds.

5 Woe to you who devour the finest of the wheat, and drink wine in large bowls, and tread under foot the lowly with your might.

6 Woe to you who drink water from every fountain, for suddenly shall ye be consumed and wither away, because ye have forsaken the fountain of life.

7 Woe to you who work unrighteousness and deceit and blasphemy: it shall

be a memorial against you for evil.

8 Woe to you, ye mighty, who with might oppress the righteous; for the day of your destruction is coming. In those days many and good days shall come to the righteous- in the day of your judgement.

## Chapter 97

1 Believe, ye righteous, that the sinners will become a shame and perish in the day of unrighteousness.

2 Be it known unto you, ye sinners, that the Most High is mindful of your destruction, and the angels of heaven rejoice over your destruction.

3 What will ye do, ye sinners, and whither will ye flee on that day of judgement, when ye hear the voice of the prayer of the righteous?

4 Yea, ye shall fare like unto them, against whom this word shall be a testimony: Ye have been companions of sinners.

5 And in those days the prayer of the righteous shall reach unto YHWH, and for you the days of your judgement shall come.

6 And all the words of your unrighteousness shall be read out before the Great Holy One, and your faces shall be covered with shame, and He will reject every work which is grounded on unrighteousness.

7 Woe to you, ye sinners, who live on the mid ocean and on the dry land, whose remembrance is evil against you.

8 Woe to you who acquire silver and gold in unrighteousness and say: We have become rich with riches and have possessions; and have acquired everything we have desired.

9 And now let us do what we purposed: for we have gathered silver, and many are the husbandmen in our houses, and our granaries are brim full as with water.

10 Yea and like water your lies shall flow away; for your riches shall not abide, but speedily ascend from you; for ye have acquired it all in unrighteousness, and ye shall be given over to a great curse.

## Chapter 98

1 And now I swear unto you, to the wise and to the foolish, for ye shall have manifold experiences on the earth.

2 For ye men shall put on more adornments than a woman, and coloured garments more than a virgin: in royalty and in grandeur and in power, and in silver and in gold and in purple, and in splendour and in food they shall be poured out as water.

3 Therefore they shall be wanting in doctrine and wisdom, and they shall perish thereby together with their possessions; and with all their glory and

their splendour, and in shame and in slaughter and in great destitution, their spirits shall be cast into the furnace of fire.

4 I have sworn unto you, ye sinners, as a mountain has not become a slave, and a hill does not become the handmaid of a woman, even so sin has not been sent upon the earth, but man of himself has created it, and under a great curse shall they fall who commit it.

5 And barrenness has not been given to the woman, but on account of the deeds of her own hands she dies without children.

6 I have sworn unto you, ye sinners, by the Holy Great One, that all your evil deeds are revealed in the heavens, and that none of your deeds of oppression are covered and hidden.

7 And do not think in your spirit nor say in your heart that ye do not know and that ye do not see that every sin is every day recorded in heaven in the presence of the Most High.

8 From henceforth ye know that all your oppression wherewith ye oppress is written down every day till the day of your judgement.

9 Woe to you, ye fools, for through your folly shall ye perish: and ye transgress against the wise, and so good hap shall not be your portion.

10 And now, know ye that ye are prepared for the day of destruction: wherefore do not hope to live, ye sinners, but ye shall depart and die; for ye know no ransom; for ye are prepared for the day of the great judgement, for the day of tribulation and great shame for your spirits.

11 Woe to you, ye obstinate of heart, who work wickedness and eat blood: whence have ye good things to eat and to drink and to be filled? From all the good things which YHWH the Most High has placed in abundance on the earth; therefore ye shall have no peace.

12 Woe to you who love the deeds of unrighteousness: wherefore do ye hope for good hap unto yourselves? know that ye shall be delivered into the hands of the righteous, and they shall cut off your necks and slay you, and have no mercy upon you.

13 Woe to you who rejoice in the tribulation of the righteous; for no grave shall be dug for you.

14 Woe to you who set at nought the words of the righteous; for ye shall have no hope of life.

15 Woe to you who write down lying and godless words; for they write down their lies that men may hear them and act godlessly towards their neighbour.

16 Therefore they shall have no peace but die a sudden death.

## Chapter 99

1 Woe to you who work godlessness, and glory in lying and extol them: ye

shall perish, and no happy life shall be yours.

2 Woe to them who pervert the words of uprightness, and transgress the eternal law, and transform themselves into what they were not into sinners: they shall be trodden under foot upon the earth.

3 In those days make ready, ye righteous, to raise your prayers as a memorial, and place them as a testimony before the angels, That they may place the sin of the sinners for a memorial before the Most High.

4 In those days the nations shall be stirred up, and the families of the nations shall arise on the day of destruction.

5 And in those days the destitute shall go forth and carry off their children, and they shall abandon them, so that their children shall perish through them: yea, they shall abandon their children that are still sucklings, and not return to them, and shall have no pity on their beloved ones.

6 And again I swear to you, ye sinners, that sin is prepared for a day of unceasing bloodshed.

7 And they who worship stones, and grave images of gold and silver and wood and stone and clay, and those who worship impure spirits and demons, and all kinds of idols not according to knowledge, shall get no manner of help from them.

8 And they shall become godless by reason of the folly of their hearts, and their eyes shall be blinded through the fear of their hearts and through visions in their dreams.

9 Through these they shall become godless and fearful; for they shall have wrought all their work in a lie, and shall have worshiped a stone: therefore in an instant shall they perish.

10 But in those days blessed are all they who accept the words of wisdom, and understand them, and observe the paths of the Most High, and walk in the path of His righteousness, and become not godless with the godless; for they shall be saved.

11 Woe to you who spread evil to your neighbours; for you shall be slain in Sheol.

12 Woe to you who make deceitful and false measures, and to them who cause bitterness on the earth; for they shall thereby be utterly consumed.

13 Woe to you who build your houses through the grievous toil of others, and all their building materials are the bricks and stones of sin; I tell you ye shall have no peace.

14 Woe to them who reject the measure and eternal heritage of their fathers and whose souls follow after idols; for they shall have no rest.

15 Woe to them who work unrighteousness and help oppression, and slay their neighbours until the day of the great judgement.

16 For He shall cast down your glory, and bring affliction on your hearts, and shall arouse His fierce indignation, and destroy you all with the sword;

and all the holy and righteous shall remember your sins.

## Chapter 100

1 And in those days in one place the fathers together with their sons shall be smitten, and brothers one with another shall fall in death, till the streams flow with their blood.

2 For a man shall not withhold his hand from slaying his sons and his sons' sons, and the sinner shall not withhold his hand from his honoured brother: from dawn till sunset they shall slay one another.

3 And the horse shall walk up to the breast in the blood of sinners, and the chariot shall be submerged to its height.

4 In those days the angels shall descend into the secret places and gather together into one place all those who brought down sin, and the Most High will arise on that day of judgement to execute great judgement amongst sinners.

5 And over all the righteous and holy He will appoint guardians from amongst the holy angels to guard them as the apple of an eye, until He makes an end of all wickedness and all sin, and though the righteous sleep a long sleep, they have nought to fear.

6 And then the children of the earth shall see the wise in security, and shall understand all the words of this book, and recognize that their riches shall not be able to save them in the overthrow of their sins.

7 Woe to you, Sinners, on the day of strong anguish, ye who afflict the righteous and burn them with fire: ye shall be requited according to your works.

8 Woe to you, ye obstinate of heart, who watch in order to devise wickedness: therefore shall fear come upon you and there shall be none to help you.

9 Woe to you, ye sinners, on account of the words of your mouth, and on account of the deeds of your hands which your godlessness as wrought, in blazing flames burning worse than fire shall ye burn.

10 And now, know ye that from the angels He will inquire as to your deeds in heaven, from the sun and from the moon and from the stars in reference to your sins because upon the earth ye execute judgement on the righteous.

11 And He will summon to testify against you every cloud and mist and dew and rain; for they shall all be withheld because of you from descending upon you, and they shall be mindful of your sins.

12 And now give presents to the rain that it be not withheld from descending upon you, nor yet the dew, when it has received gold and silver from you that it may descend.

13 When the hoar-frost and snow with their chilliness, and all the snow-

storms with all their plagues fall upon you, in those days ye shall not be able to stand before them.

## Chapter 101

1 Observe the heaven, ye children of heaven, and every work of the Most High, and fear ye Him and work no evil in His presence.

2 If He closes the windows of heaven, and withholdeth the rain and the dew from descending on the earth on your account, what will ye do then?

3 And if He sends His anger upon you because of your deeds, ye cannot petition Him; for ye spake proud and insolent words against His righteousness: therefore ye shall have no peace.

4 And see ye not the sailors of the ships, how their ships are tossed to and fro by the waves, and are shaken by the winds, and are in sore trouble?

5 And therefore do they fear because all their goodly possessions go upon the sea with them, and they have evil forebodings of heart that the sea will swallow them and they will perish therein.

6 Are not the entire sea and all its waters, and all its movements, the work of the Most High, and has He not set limits to its doings, and confined it throughout by the sand?

7 And at His reproof it is afraid and dries up, and all its fish die and all that is in it; But ye sinners that are on the earth fear Him not.

8 Has He not made the heaven and the earth, and all that is therein? Who has given understanding and wisdom to everything that moves on the earth and in the sea.

9 Do not the sailors of the ships fear the sea? Yet sinners fear not the Most High.

## Chapter 102

1 In those days when He hath brought a grievous fire upon you, whither will ye flee, and where will ye find deliverance? And when He launches forth His Word against you Will you not be affrighted and fear?

2 And all the luminaries shall be affrighted with great fear, and all the earth shall be affrighted and tremble and be alarmed.

3 And all the angels shall execute their commands and shall seek to hide themselves from the presence of the Great Glory, and the children of earth shall tremble and quake; and ye sinners shall be cursed for ever, and ye shall have no peace.

4 Fear ye not, ye souls of the righteous, and be hopeful ye that have died in righteousness.

5 And grieve not if your soul into Sheol has descended in grief, and that in

your life your body fared not according to your goodness, but wait for the day of the judgement of sinners and for the day of cursing and chastisement.

6 And yet when ye die the sinners speak over you: As we die, so die the righteous, and what benefit do they reap for their deeds?

7 Behold, even as we, so do they die in grief and darkness, and what have they more than we? From henceforth we are equal.

8 And what will they receive and what will they see for ever? Behold, they too have died, and henceforth for ever shall they see no light.

9 I tell you, ye sinners, ye are content to eat and drink, and rob and sin, and strip men naked, and acquire wealth and see good days.

10 Have ye seen the righteous how their end falls out, that no manner of violence is found in them till their death?

11 Nevertheless they perished and became as though they had not been, and their spirits descended into Sheol in tribulation.

### Chapter 103

1 Now, therefore, I swear to you, the righteous, by the glory of the Great and Honoured and Mighty One in dominion, and by His greatness I swear to you:

2 I know a mystery and have read the heavenly tablets, and have seen the holy books, and have found written therein and inscribed regarding them:

3 That all goodness and joy and glory are prepared for them, and written down for the spirits of those who have died in righteousness, and that manifold good shall be given to you in recompense for your labours, and that your lot is abundantly beyond the lot of the living.

4 And the spirits of you who have died in righteousness shall live and rejoice, and their spirits shall not perish, nor their memorial from before the face of the Great One unto all the generations of the world: wherefore no longer fear their contumely.

5 Woe to you, ye sinners, when ye have died, if ye die in the wealth of your sins, and those who are like you say regarding you: Blessed are the sinners: they have seen all their days.

6 And how they have died in prosperity and in wealth, and have not seen tribulation or murder in their life; and they have died in honour, and judgement has not been executed on them during their life.

7 Know ye, that their souls will be made to descend into Sheol, and they shall be wretched in their great tribulation.

8 And into darkness and chains and a burning flame where there is grievous judgement shall your spirits enter; and the great judgement shall be for all the generations of the world. Woe to you, for ye shall have no



peace.

9 Say not in regard to the righteous and good who are in life: In our troubled days we have toiled laboriously and experienced every trouble, and met with much evil and been consumed, and have become few and our spirit small.

10 And we have been destroyed and have not found any to help us even with a word: we have been tortured and destroyed, and not hoped to see life from day to day.

11 We hoped to be the head and have become the tail: we have toiled laboriously and had no satisfaction in our toil; and we have become the food of the sinners and the unrighteous, and they have laid their yoke heavily upon us.

12 They have had dominion over us that hated us and smote us; and to those that hated us we have bowed our necks, but they pitied us not.

13 We desired to get away from them that we might escape and be at rest, but found no place whereunto we should flee and be safe from them.

14 We complained to the rulers in our tribulation, and cried out against those who devoured us, but they did not attend to our cries and would not hearken to our voice.

15 And they helped those who robbed us and devoured us and those who made us few; and they concealed their oppression, and they did not remove from us the yoke of those that devoured us and dispersed us and murdered us, and they concealed their murder, and remembered not that they had lifted up their hands against us.

## Chapter 104

1 I swear unto you, that in heaven the angels remember you for good before the glory of the Great One: and your names are written before the glory of the Great One.

2 Be hopeful; for aforesaid ye were put to shame through ill and affliction; but now ye shall shine as the lights of heaven, ye shall shine and ye shall be seen, and the portals of heaven shall be opened to you.

3 And in your cry, cry for judgement, and it shall appear to you; for all your tribulation shall be visited on the rulers, and on all who helped those who plundered you.

4 Be hopeful, and cast not away your hopes for ye shall have great joy as the angels of heaven.

5 What shall ye be obliged to do? Ye shall not have to hide on the day of the great judgement and ye shall not be found as sinners, and the eternal judgement shall be far from you for all the generations of the world.

6 And now fear not, ye righteous, when ye see the sinners growing strong

and prospering in their ways: be not companions with them, but keep afar from their violence; for ye shall become companions of the hosts of heaven.

7 And, although ye sinners say: All our sins shall not be searched out and be written down, Nevertheless they shall write down all your sins every day.

8 And now I show unto you that light and darkness, day and night, see all your sins.

9 Be not godless in your hearts, and lie not and alter not the words of uprightness, nor charge with lying the words of the Holy Great One, nor take account of your idols; for all your lying and all your godlessness issue not in righteousness but in great sin.

10 And now I know this mystery, that sinners will alter and pervert the words of righteousness in many ways, and will speak wicked words, and lie, and practice great deceits, and write books concerning their words.

11 But when they write down truthfully all my words in their languages, and do not change or minish ought from my words but write them all down truthfully- all that I first testified concerning them.

12 Then, I know another mystery, that books will be given to the righteous and the wise to become a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom.

13 And to them shall the books be given, and they shall believe in them and rejoice over them, and then shall all the righteous who have learnt therefrom all the paths of uprightness be recompensed.

## Chapter 105

1 In those days YHWH bade them to summon and testify to the children of earth concerning their wisdom: Show it unto them; for ye are their guides, and a recompense over the whole earth.

2 For I and My son will be united with them for ever in the paths of uprightness in their lives; and ye shall have peace: rejoice, ye children of uprightness. Amen.

## Chapter 106

1 And after some days my son Methuselah took a wife for his son Lamech, and she became pregnant by him and bore a son.

2 And his body was white as snow and red as the blooming of a rose, and the hair of his head and his long locks were white as wool, and his eyes beautiful. And when he opened his eyes, he lighted up the whole house like the sun, and the whole house was very bright.

3 And thereupon he arose in the hands of the midwife, opened his mouth, and conversed with the Lord of righteousness.

4 And his father Lamech was afraid of him and fled, and came to his father Methuselah.

5 And he said unto him: I have begotten a strange son, diverse from and unlike man, and resembling the sons of the God of heaven; and his nature is different and he is not like us, and his eyes are as the rays of the sun, and his countenance is glorious.

6 And it seems to me that he is not sprung from me but from the angels, and I fear that in his days a wonder may be wrought on the earth.

7 And now, my father, I am here to petition thee and implore thee that thou mayest go to Enoch, our father, and learn from him the truth, for his dwelling-place is amongst the angels.

8 And when Methuselah heard the words of his son, he came to me to the ends of the earth; for he had heard that I was there, and he cried aloud, and I heard his voice and I came to him. And I said unto him: Behold, here am I, my son, wherefore hast thou come to me?

9 And he answered and said: Because of a great cause of anxiety have I come to thee, and because of a disturbing vision have I approached.

10 And now, my father, hear me: unto Lamech my son there hath been born a son, the like of whom there is none, and his nature is not like man's nature, and the colour of his body is whiter than snow and redder than the bloom of a rose, and the hair of his head is whiter than white wool, and his eyes are like the rays of the sun, and he opened his eyes and thereupon lighted up the whole house.

11 And he arose in the hands of the midwife, and opened his mouth and blessed the Lord of heaven.

12 And his father Lamech became afraid and fled to me, and did not believe that he was sprung from him, but that he was in the likeness of the angels of heaven; and behold I have come to thee that thou mayest make known to me the truth.

13 And I, Enoch, answered and said unto him: YHWH will do a new thing on the earth, and this I have already seen in a vision, and make known to thee that in the generation of my father Jared some of the angels of heaven transgressed the word of YHWH.

14 And behold they commit sin and transgress the law, and have united themselves with women and commit sin with them, and have married some of them, and have begot children by them.

15 And they shall produce on the earth giants not according to the spirit, but according to the flesh, and there shall be a great punishment on the earth, and the earth shall be cleansed from all impurity.

16 Yea, there shall come a great destruction over the whole earth, and there shall be a deluge and a great destruction for one year.

17 And this son who has been born unto you shall be left on the earth, and

his three children shall be saved with him: when all mankind that are on the earth shall die, he and his sons shall be saved.

18 And now make known to thy son Lamech that he who has been born is in truth his son, and call his name Noah; for he shall be left to you, and he and his sons shall be saved from the destruction, which shall come upon the earth on account of all the sin and all the unrighteousness, which shall be consummated on the earth in his days.

19 And after that there shall be still more unrighteousness than that which was first consummated on the earth; for I know the mysteries of the holy ones; for He, YHWH, has showed me and informed me, and I have read them in the heavenly tablets.

## Chapter 107

1 And I saw written on them that generation upon generation shall transgress, till a generation of righteousness arises, and transgression is destroyed and sin passes away from the earth, and all manner of good comes upon it.

2 And now, my son, go and make known to thy son Lamech that this son, which has been born, is in truth his son, and that this is no lie.

3 And when Methuselah had heard the words of his father Enoch- for he had shown to him everything in secret- he returned and showed them to him and called the name of that son Noah; for he will comfort the earth after all the destruction.

## Chapter 108

1 Another book which Enoch wrote for his son Methuselah and for those who will come after him, and keep the law in the last days.

2 Ye who have done good shall wait for those days till an end is made of those who work evil; and an end of the might of the transgressors.

3 And wait ye indeed till sin has passed away, for their names shall be blotted out of the book of life and out of the holy books, and their seed shall be destroyed for ever, and their spirits shall be slain, and they shall cry and make lamentation in a place that is a chaotic wilderness, and in the fire shall they burn; for there is no earth there.

4 And I saw there something like an invisible cloud; for by reason of its depth I could not look over, and I saw a flame of fire blazing brightly, and things like shining mountains circling and sweeping to and fro.

5 And I asked one of the holy angels who was with me and said unto him: What is this shining thing? For it is not a heaven but only the flame of a blazing fire, and the voice of weeping and crying and lamentation and

strong pain.

6 And he said unto me: This place which thou seest- here are cast the spirits of sinners and blasphemers, and of those who work wickedness, and of those who pervert everything that YHWH hath spoken through the mouth of the prophets- even the things that shall be.

7 For some of them are written and inscribed above in the heaven, in order that the angels may read them and know that which shall befall the sinners, and the spirits of the humble, and of those who have afflicted their bodies, and been recompensed by God; and of those who have been put to shame by wicked men:

8 who love God and loved neither gold nor silver nor any of the good things which are in the world, but gave over their bodies to torture.

9 Who, since they came into being, longed not after earthly food, but regarded everything as a passing breath, and lived accordingly, and YHWH tried them much, and their spirits were found pure so that they should bless His name.

10 And all the blessings destined for them I have recounted in the books. And He hath assigned them their recompense, because they have been found to be such as loved heaven more than their life in the world, and though they were trodden under foot of wicked men, and experienced abuse and reviling from them and were put to shame, yet they blessed me.

11 And now I will summon the spirits of the good who belong to the generation of light, and I will transform those who were born in darkness, who in the flesh were not recompensed with such honour as their faithfulness deserved.

12 And I will bring forth in shining light those who have loved My holy name, and I will seat each on the throne of his honour.

13 And they shall be resplendent for times without number; for righteousness is the judgement of God; for to the faithful He will give faithfulness in the habitation of upright paths.

14 And they shall see those who were, born in darkness led into darkness, while the righteous shall be resplendent.

15 And the sinners shall cry aloud and see them resplendent, and they indeed will go where days and seasons are prescribed for them.

# The Letter of Jeremiah

## Prologue

A copy of an epistle, which Jeremiah sent unto them which were to be led captives into Babylon by the king of the Babylonians, to certify them, as it was commanded him of God.

## Chapter 1

1 Because of the sins which ye have committed before God, ye shall be led away captives into Babylon by Nabuchodonosor king of the Babylonians.

2 So when ye be come unto Babylon, ye shall remain there many years, and for a long season, namely, seven generations: and after that I will bring you away peaceably from thence.

3 Now shall ye see in Babylon gods of silver, and of gold, and of wood, borne upon shoulders, which cause the nations to fear.

4 Beware therefore that ye in no wise be like to strangers, neither be ye and of them, when ye see the multitude before them and behind them, worshipping them.

5 But say ye in your hearts, O YHWH, we must worship thee.

6 For mine angel is with you, and I myself caring for your souls.

7 As for their tongue, it is polished by the workman, and they themselves are gilded and laid over with silver; yet are they but false, and cannot speak.

8 And taking gold, as it were for a virgin that loveth to go gay, they make crowns for the heads of their gods.

9 Sometimes also the priests convey from their gods gold and silver, and bestow it upon themselves.

10 Yea, they will give thereof to the common harlots, and deck them as men with garments, being gods of silver, and gods of gold, and wood.

11 Yet cannot these gods save themselves from rust and moth, though they be covered with purple raiment.

12 They wipe their faces because of the dust of the temple, when there is much upon them.

13 And he that cannot put to death one that offendeth him holdeth a sceptre, as though he were a judge of the country.

14 He hath also in his right hand a dagger and an ax: but cannot deliver himself from war and thieves.

15 Whereby they are known not to be gods: therefore fear them not.

16 For like as a vessel that a man useth is nothing worth when it is broken;

even so it is with their gods: when they be set up in the temple, their eyes be full of dust through the feet of them that come in.

17 And as the doors are made sure on every side upon him that offendeth the king, as being committed to suffer death: even so the priests make fast their temples with doors, with locks, and bars, lest their gods be spoiled with robbers.

18 They light them candles, yea, more than for themselves, whereof they cannot see one.

19 They are as one of the beams of the temple, yet they say their hearts are gnawed upon by things creeping out of the earth; and when they eat them and their clothes, they feel it not.

20 Their faces are blacked through the smoke that cometh out of the temple.

21 Upon their bodies and heads sit bats, swallows, and birds, and the cats also.

22 By this ye may know that they are no gods: therefore fear them not.

23 Notwithstanding the gold that is about them to make them beautiful, except they wipe off the rust, they will not shine: for neither when they were molten did they feel it.

24 The things wherein there is no breath are bought for a most high price.

25 They are borne upon shoulders, having no feet whereby they declare unto men that they be nothing worth.

26 They also that serve them are ashamed: for if they fall to the ground at any time, they cannot rise up again of themselves: neither, if one set them upright, can they move of themselves: neither, if they be bowed down, can they make themselves straight: but they set gifts before them as unto dead men.

27 As for the things that are sacrificed unto them, their priests sell and abuse; in like manner their wives lay up part thereof in salt; but unto the poor and impotent they give nothing of it.

28 Menstruous women and women in childbed eat their sacrifices: by these things ye may know that they are no gods: fear them not.

29 For how can they be called gods? because women set meat before the gods of silver, gold, and wood.

30 And the priests sit in their temples, having their clothes rent, and their heads and beards shaven, and nothing upon their heads.

31 They roar and cry before their gods, as men do at the feast when one is dead.

32 The priests also take off their garments, and clothe their wives and children.

33 Whether it be evil that one doeth unto them, or good, they are not able to recompense it: they can neither set up a king, nor put him down.

34 In like manner, they can neither give riches nor money: though a man make a vow unto them, and keep it not, they will not require it.

35 They can save no man from death, neither deliver the weak from the mighty.

36 They cannot restore a blind man to his sight, nor help any man in his distress.

37 They can shew no mercy to the widow, nor do good to the fatherless.

38 Their gods of wood, and which are overlaid with gold and silver, are like the stones that be hewn out of the mountain: they that worship them shall be confounded.

39 How should a man then think and say that they are gods, when even the Chaldeans themselves dishonour them?

40 Who if they shall see one dumb that cannot speak, they bring him, and intreat Bel that he may speak, as though he were able to understand.

41 Yet they cannot understand this themselves, and leave them: for they have no knowledge.

42 The women also with cords about them, sitting in the ways, burn bran for perfume: but if any of them, drawn by some that passeth by, lie with him, she reproacheth her fellow, that she was not thought as worthy as herself, nor her cord broken.

43 Whatsoever is done among them is false: how may it then be thought or said that they are gods?

44 They are made of carpenters and goldsmiths: they can be nothing else than the workmen will have them to be.

45 And they themselves that made them can never continue long; how should then the things that are made of them be gods?

46 For they left lies and reproaches to them that come after.

47 For when there cometh any war or plague upon them, the priests consult with themselves, where they may be hidden with them.

48 How then cannot men perceive that they be no gods, which can neither save themselves from war, nor from plague?

49 For seeing they be but of wood, and overlaid with silver and gold, it shall be known hereafter that they are false:

50 And it shall manifestly appear to all nations and kings that they are no gods, but the works of men's hands, and that there is no work of God in them.

51 Who then may not know that they are no gods?

52 For neither can they set up a king in the land, nor give rain unto men.

53 Neither can they judge their own cause, nor redress a wrong, being unable: for they are as crows between heaven and earth.

54 Whereupon when fire falleth upon the house of gods of wood, or laid over with gold or silver, their priests will flee away, and escape; but they



themselves shall be burned asunder like beams.

55 Moreover they cannot withstand any king or enemies: how can it then be thought or said that they be gods?

56 Neither are those gods of wood, and laid over with silver or gold, able to escape either from thieves or robbers.

57 Whose gold, and silver, and garments wherewith they are clothed, they that are strong take, and go away withal: neither are they able to help themselves.

58 Therefore it is better to be a king that sheweth his power, or else a profitable vessel in an house, which the owner shall have use of, than such false gods; or to be a door in an house, to keep such things therein, than such false gods. or a pillar of wood in a a palace, than such false gods.

59 For sun, moon, and stars, being bright and sent to do their offices, are obedient.

60 In like manner the lightning when it breaketh forth is easy to be seen; and after the same manner the wind bloweth in every country.

61 And when God commandeth the clouds to go over the whole world, they do as they are bidden.

62 And the fire sent from above to consume hills and woods doeth as it is commanded: but these are like unto them neither in shew nor power.

63 Wherefore it is neither to be supposed nor said that they are gods, seeing, they are able neither to judge causes, nor to do good unto men.

64 Knowing therefore that they are no gods, fear them not,

65 For they can neither curse nor bless kings:

66 Neither can they shew signs in the heavens among the heathen, nor shine as the sun, nor give light as the moon.

67 The beasts are better than they: for they can get under a cover and help themselves.

68 It is then by no means manifest unto us that they are gods: therefore fear them not.

69 For as a scarecrow in a garden of cucumbers keepeth nothing: so are their gods of wood, and laid over with silver and gold.

70 And likewise their gods of wood, and laid over with silver and gold, are like to a white thorn in an orchard, that every bird sitteth upon; as also to a dead body, that is east into the dark.

71 And ye shall know them to be no gods by the bright purple that rotteth upon them: and they themselves afterward shall be eaten, and shall be a reproach in the country.

72 Better therefore is the just man that hath none idols: for he shall be far from reproach.

# The Book of Baruch

## Chapter 1

1 And these are the words of the book, which Baruch the son of Nerias, the son of Maasias, the son of Sedecias, the son of Asadias, the son of Chelcias, wrote in Babylon,

2 In the fifth year, and in the seventh day of the month, what time as the Chaldeans took Jerusalem, and burnt it with fire.

3 And Baruch did read the words of this book in the hearing of Jechonias the son of Joachim king of Juda, and in the ears of all the people that came to hear the book,

4 And in the hearing of the nobles, and of the king's sons, and in the hearing of the elders, and of all the people, from the lowest unto the highest, even of all them that dwelt at Babylon by the river Sud.

5 Whereupon they wept, fasted, and prayed before YHWH.

6 They made also a collection of money according to every man's power:

7 And they sent it to Jerusalem unto Joachim the high priest, the son of Chelcias, son of Salom, and to the priests, and to all the people which were found with him at Jerusalem,

8 At the same time when he received the vessels of the house of YHWH, that were carried out of the temple, to return them into the land of Juda, the tenth day of the month Sivan, namely, silver vessels, which Sedecias the son of Josias king of Jada had made,

9 After that Nabuchodonosor king of Babylon had carried away Jechonias, and the princes, and the captives, and the mighty men, and the people of the land, from Jerusalem, and brought them unto Babylon.

10 And they said, Behold, we have sent you money to buy you burnt offerings, and sin offerings, and incense, and prepare ye manna, and offer upon the altar of YHWH our God;

11 And pray for the life of Nabuchodonosor king of Babylon, and for the life of Balthasar his son, that their days may be upon earth as the days of heaven:

12 And YHWH will give us strength, and lighten our eyes, and we shall live under the shadow of Nabuchodonosor king of Babylon, and under the shadow of Balthasar his son, and we shall serve them many days, and find favour in their sight.

13 Pray for us also unto YHWH our God, for we have sinned against YHWH our God; and unto this day the fury of YHWH and his wrath is not turned from us.

14 And ye shall read this book which we have sent unto you, to make confession in the house of YHWH, upon the feasts and solemn days.

15 And ye shall say, To YHWH our God belongeth righteousness, but unto us the confusion of faces, as it is come to pass this day, unto them of Juda, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem,

16 And to our kings, and to our princes, and to our priests, and to our prophets, and to our fathers:

17 For we have sinned before YHWH,

18 And disobeyed him, and have not hearkened unto the voice of YHWH our God, to walk in the commandments that he gave us openly:

19 Since the day that YHWH brought our forefathers out of the land of Egypt, unto this present day, we have been disobedient unto YHWH our God, and we have been negligent in not hearing his voice.

20 Wherefore the evils cleaved unto us, and the curse, which YHWH appointed by Moses his servant at the time that he brought our fathers out of the land of Egypt, to give us a land that floweth with milk and honey, like as it is to see this day.

21 Nevertheless we have not hearkened unto the voice of YHWH our God, according unto all the words of the prophets, whom he sent unto us:

22 But every man followed the imagination of his own wicked heart, to serve strange gods, and to do evil in the sight of YHWH our God.

## Chapter 2

1 Therefore YHWH hath made good his word, which he pronounced against us, and against our judges that judged Israel, and against our kings, and against our princes, and against the men of Israel and Juda,

2 To bring upon us great plagues, such as never happened under the whole heaven, as it came to pass in Jerusalem, according to the things that were written in the law of Moses;

3 That a man should eat the flesh of his own son, and the flesh of his own daughter.

4 Moreover he hath delivered them to be in subjection to all the kingdoms that are round about us, to be as a reproach and desolation among all the people round about, where YHWH hath scattered them.

5 Thus we were cast down, and not exalted, because we have sinned against YHWH our God, and have not been obedient unto his voice.

6 To YHWH our God appertaineth righteousness: but unto us and to our fathers open shame, as appeareth this day.

7 For all these plagues are come upon us, which YHWH hath pronounced against us.

8 Yet have we not prayed before YHWH, that we might turn every one

from the imaginations of his wicked heart.

9 Wherefore YHWH watched over us for evil, and YHWH hath brought it upon us: for YHWH is righteous in all his works which he hath commanded us.

10 Yet we have not hearkened unto his voice, to walk in the commandments of YHWH, that he hath set before us.

11 And now, O YHWH God of Israel, that hast brought thy people out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and high arm, and with signs, and with wonders, and with great power, and hast gotten thyself a name, as appeareth this day:

12 O YHWH our God, we have sinned, we have done ungodly, we have dealt unrighteously in all thine ordinances.

13 Let thy wrath turn from us: for we are but a few left among the heathen, where thou hast scattered us.

14 Hear our prayers, O YHWH, and our petitions, and deliver us for thine own sake, and give us favour in the sight of them which have led us away:

15 That all the earth may know that thou art YHWH our God, because Israel and his posterity is called by thy name.

16 O YHWH, look down from thine holy house, and consider us: bow down thine ear, O YHWH, to hear us.

17 Open thine eyes, and behold; for the dead that are in the graves, whose souls are taken from their bodies, will give unto YHWH neither praise nor righteousness:

18 But the soul that is greatly vexed, which goeth stooping and feeble, and the eyes that fail, and the hungry soul, will give thee praise and righteousness, O YHWH.

19 Therefore we do not make our humble supplication before thee, O YHWH our God, for the righteousness of our fathers, and of our kings.

20 For thou hast sent out thy wrath and indignation upon us, as thou hast spoken by thy servants the prophets, saying,

21 Thus saith YHWH, Bow down your shoulders to serve the king of Babylon: so shall ye remain in the land that I gave unto your fathers.

22 But if ye will not hear the voice of YHWH, to serve the king of Babylon,

23 I will cause to cease out of the cities of Judah, and from without Jerusalem, the voice of mirth, and the voice of joy, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride: and the whole land shall be desolate of inhabitants.

24 But we would not hearken unto thy voice, to serve the king of Babylon: therefore hast thou made good the words that thou spakest by thy servants the prophets, namely, that the bones of our kings, and the bones of our fathers, should be taken out of their place.

25 And, lo, they are cast out to the heat of the day, and to the frost of the night, and they died in great miseries by famine, by sword, and by pestilence.

26 And the house which is called by thy name hast thou laid waste, as it is to be seen this day, for the wickedness of the house of Israel and the house of Juda.

27 O YHWH our God, thou hast dealt with us after all thy goodness, and according to all that great mercy of thine,

28 As thou spakest by thy servant Moses in the day when thou didst command him to write the law before the children of Israel, saying,

29 If ye will not hear my voice, surely this very great multitude shall be turned into a small number among the nations, where I will scatter them.

30 For I knew that they would not hear me, because it is a stiffnecked people: but in the land of their captivities they shall remember themselves.

31 And shall know that I am YHWH their God: for I will give them an heart, and ears to hear:

32 And they shall praise me in the land of their captivity, and think upon my name,

33 And return from their stiff neck, and from their wicked deeds: for they shall remember the way of their fathers, which sinned before YHWH.

34 And I will bring them again into the land which I promised with an oath unto their fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and they shall be lords of it: and I will increase them, and they shall not be diminished.

35 And I will make an everlasting covenant with them to be their God, and they shall be my people: and I will no more drive my people of Israel out of the land that I have given them.

### Chapter 3

1 O YHWH Almighty, God of Israel, the soul in anguish the troubled spirit, crieth unto thee.

2 Hear, O YHWH, and have mercy; thou art merciful: and have pity upon us, because we have sinned before thee.

3 For thou endurest for ever, and we perish utterly.

4 O YHWH Almighty, thou God of Israel, hear now the prayers of the dead Israelites, and of their children, which have sinned before thee, and not hearkened unto the voice of thee their God: for the which cause these plagues cleave unto us.

5 Remember not the iniquities of our forefathers: but think upon thy power and thy name now at this time.

6 For thou art YHWH our God, and thee, O YHWH, will we praise.

7 And for this cause thou hast put thy fear in our hearts, to the intent that

we should call upon thy name, and praise thee in our captivity: for we have called to mind all the iniquity of our forefathers, that sinned before thee.

8 Behold, we are yet this day in our captivity, where thou hast scattered us, for a reproach and a curse, and to be subject to payments, according to all the iniquities of our fathers, which departed from YHWH our God.

9 Hear, Israel, the commandments of life: give ear to understand wisdom.

10 How happeneth it Israel, that thou art in thine enemies' land, that thou art waxen old in a strange country, that thou art defiled with the dead,

11 That thou art counted with them that go down into the grave?

12 Thou hast forsaken the fountain of wisdom.

13 For if thou hadst walked in the way of God, thou shouldest have dwelled in peace for ever.

14 Learn where is wisdom, where is strength, where is understanding; that thou mayest know also where is length of days, and life, where is the light of the eyes, and peace.

15 Who hath found out her place? or who hath come into her treasures ?

16 Where are the princes of the heathen become, and such as ruled the beasts upon the earth;

17 They that had their pastime with the fowls of the air, and they that hoarded up silver and gold, wherein men trust, and made no end of their getting?

18 For they that wrought in silver, and were so careful, and whose works are unsearchable,

19 They are vanished and gone down to the grave, and others are come up in their steads.

20 Young men have seen light, and dwelt upon the earth: but the way of knowledge have they not known,

21 Nor understood the paths thereof, nor laid hold of it: their children were far off from that way.

22 It hath not been heard of in Chanaan, neither hath it been seen in Theman.

23 The Agarenes that seek wisdom upon earth, the merchants of Meran and of Theman, the authors of fables, and searchers out of understanding; none of these have known the way of wisdom, or remember her paths.

24 O Israel, how great is the house of God! and how large is the place of his possession!

25 Great, and hath none end; high, and unmeasurable.

26 There were the giants famous from the beginning, that were of so great stature, and so expert in war.

27 Those did not YHWH choose, neither gave he the way of knowledge unto them:

28 But they were destroyed, because they had no wisdom, and perished

through their own foolishness.

29 Who hath gone up into heaven, and taken her, and brought her down from the clouds?

30 Who hath gone over the sea, and found her, and will bring her for pure gold?

31 No man knoweth her way, nor thinketh of her path.

32 But he that knoweth all things knoweth her, and hath found her out with his understanding: he that prepared the earth for evermore hath filled it with fourfooted beasts:

33 He that sendeth forth light, and it goeth, calleth it again, and it obeyeth him with fear.

34 The stars shined in their watches, and rejoiced: when he calleth them, they say, Here we be; and so with cheerfulness they shewed light unto him that made them.

35 This is our God, and there shall none other be accounted of in comparison of him

36 He hath found out all the way of knowledge, and hath given it unto Jacob his servant, and to Israel his beloved.

37 Afterward did he shew himself upon earth, and conversed with men.

## Chapter 4

1 This is the book of the commandments of God, and the law that endureth for ever: all they that keep it shall come to life; but such as leave it shall die.

2 Turn thee, O Jacob, and take hold of it: walk in the presence of the light thereof, that thou mayest be illuminated.

3 Give not thine honour to another, nor the things that are profitable unto thee to a strange nation.

4 O Israel, happy are we: for things that are pleasing to God are made known unto us.

5 Be of good cheer, my people, the memorial of Israel.

6 Ye were sold to the nations, not for your destruction: but because ye moved God to wrath, ye were delivered unto the enemies.

7 For ye provoked him that made you by sacrificing unto devils, and not to God.

8 Ye have forgotten the everlasting God, that brought you up; and ye have grieved Jerusalem, that nursed you.

9 For when she saw the wrath of God coming upon you, she said, Harken, O ye that dwell about Sion: God hath brought upon me great mourning;

10 For I saw the captivity of my sons and daughters, which the Everlasting

brought upon them.

11 With joy did I nourish them; but sent them away with weeping and mourning.

12 Let no man rejoice over me, a widow, and forsaken of many, who for the sins of my children am left desolate; because they departed from the law of God.

13 They knew not his statutes, nor walked in the ways of his commandments, nor trod in the paths of discipline in his righteousness.

14 Let them that dwell about Sion come, and remember ye the captivity of my sons and daughters, which the Everlasting hath brought upon them.

15 For he hath brought a nation upon them from far, a shameless nation, and of a strange language, who neither revered old man, nor pitied child.

16 These have carried away the dear beloved children of the widow, and left her that was alone desolate without daughters.

17 But what can I help you?

18 For he that brought these plagues upon you will deliver you from the hands of your enemies.

19 Go your way, O my children, go your way: for I am left desolate.

20 I have put off the clothing of peace, and put upon me the sackcloth of my prayer: I will cry unto the Everlasting in my days.

21 Be of good cheer, O my children, cry unto YHWH, and he will deliver you from the power and hand of the enemies.

22 For my hope is in the Everlasting, that he will save you; and joy is come unto me from the Holy One, because of the mercy which shall soon come unto you from the Everlasting our Saviour.

23 For I sent you out with mourning and weeping: but God will give you to me again with joy and gladness for ever.

24 Like as now the neighbours of Sion have seen your captivity: so shall they see shortly your salvation from our God which shall come upon you with great glory, and brightness of the Everlasting.

25 My children, suffer patiently the wrath that is come upon you from God: for thine enemy hath persecuted thee; but shortly thou shalt see his destruction, and shalt tread upon his neck.

26 My delicate ones have gone rough ways, and were taken away as a flock caught of the enemies.

27 Be of good comfort, O my children, and cry unto God: for ye shall be remembered of him that brought these things upon you.

28 For as it was your mind to go astray from God: so, being returned, seek him ten times more.

29 For he that hath brought these plagues upon you shall bring you everlasting joy with your salvation.



30 Take a good heart, O Jerusalem: for he that gave thee that name will comfort thee.

31 Miserable are they that afflicted thee, and rejoiced at thy fall.

32 Miserable are the cities which thy children served: miserable is she that received thy sons.

33 For as she rejoiced at thy ruin, and was glad of thy fall: so shall she be grieved for her own desolation.

34 For I will take away the rejoicing of her great multitude, and her pride shall be turned into mourning.

35 For fire shall come upon her from the Everlasting, long to endure; and she shall be inhabited of devils for a great time.

36 O Jerusalem, look about thee toward the east, and behold the joy that cometh unto thee from God.

37 Lo, thy sons come, whom thou sentest away, they come gathered together from the east to the west by the word of the Holy One, rejoicing in the glory of God.

## Chapter 5

1 Put off, O Jerusalem, the garment of mourning and affliction, and put on the comeliness of the glory that cometh from God for ever.

2 Cast about thee a double garment of the righteousness which cometh from God; and set a diadem on thine head of the glory of the Everlasting.

3 For God will shew thy brightness unto every country under heaven.

4 For thy name shall be called of God for ever The peace of righteousness, and The glory of God's worship.

5 Arise, O Jerusalem, and stand on high, and look about toward the east, and behold thy children gathered from the west unto the east by the word of the Holy One, rejoicing in the remembrance of God.

6 For they departed from thee on foot, and were led away of their enemies: but God bringeth them unto thee exalted with glory, as children of the kingdom.

7 For God hath appointed that every high hill, and banks of long continuance, should be cast down, and valleys filled up, to make even the ground, that Israel may go safely in the glory of God,

8 Moreover even the woods and every sweetsmelling tree shall overshadow Israel by the commandment of God.

9 For God shall lead Israel with joy in the light of his glory with the mercy and righteousness that cometh from him.

# The Apocalypse of Baruch

## (2 Baruch)

### Chapter 1

1 And it came to pass in the twenty-fifth year of Jeconiah, king of Judah, that the word of YHWH.

2 came to Baruch, the son of Neriah, and said to him: Hast thou seen all that this people are doing to Me, that the evils which these two tribes which remained have done are greater than those of the ten tribes which were carried away captive?

3 For the former tribes were forced by their kings to commit sin, but these two of themselves have been forcing and compelling their kings to commit sin.

4 For this reason, behold I bring evil upon this city, and upon its inhabitants, and it shall be removed from before Me for a time, and I will scatter this people among the Gentiles that they may do good to the Gentiles. And My people shall be chastened, and the time shall come when they will seek for the prosperity of their times.

### Chapter 2

1 For I have said these things to thee that thou mayst bid Jeremiah, and all those that are like you, to retire from this city.

2 For your works are to this city as a firm pillar, And your prayers as a strong wall.

### Chapter 3

1 And I said: O YHWH, my Lord, have I come into the world for this purpose that I might see the evils of my mother?

2 Not so my Lord. If I have found grace in Thy sight, first take my spirit that I may go to my fathers and not behold the destruction of my mother.

3 For two things vehemently constrain me: for I cannot resist Thee, and my soul, moreover, cannot behold the evils of my mother.

4 But one thing I will say in Thy presence, O YHWH.

5 What, therefore, will there be after these things? for if Thou destroyest Thy city, and deliverest up Thy land to those that hate us, how shall the name of Israel be again remembered?

6 Or how shall one speak of Thy praises?

7 Or to whom shall that which is in Thy law be explained? Or shall the world return to its nature, aforetime and the age revert to primeval silence?  
8 And shall the multitude of souls be taken away, and the nature of man not again be named?  
9 And where is all that which Thou didst say to Moses regarding us?

#### Chapter 4

1 And YHWH said unto me: This city shall be delivered up for a time, and the people shall be chastened during a time, and the world will not be given over to oblivion.  
2 Dost thou think that this is that city of which I said: On the palms of My hands have I graven thee?  
3 This building now built in your midst is not that which is revealed with Me, that which was prepared beforehand here from the time when I took counsel to make Paradise, and showed it to Adam before he sinned, but when he transgressed the commandment it was removed from him, as also Paradise.  
4 And after these things I showed it to My servant Abraham by night among the portions of the victims.  
5 And again also I showed it to Moses on Mount Sinai when I showed to him the likeness of the tabernacle and all its vessels.  
6 And now, behold, it is preserved with Me, as also Paradise.  
7 Go, therefore, and do as I command thee.

#### Chapter 5

1 And I answered and said: So then I am destined to grieve for Zion, for Thine enemies will come to this place and pollute Thy sanctuary, and lead Thine inheritance into captivity, and make themselves masters of those whom Thou hast loved. And they will depart again to the place of their idols, and will boast before them: and what wilt Thou do for Thy great name?  
2 And YHWH said unto me: My name and My glory are unto all eternity; and My judgement shall maintain its right in its own time.  
3 And thou shalt see with thine eyes that the enemy will not overthrow Zion, nor shall they burn Jerusalem, but be the ministers of the Judge for the time.  
4 But do thou go and do whatsoever I have said unto thee.  
5 And I went and took Jeremiah, and Adu, and Seriah, and Jabish, and Gedaliah, and all the honourable men of the people, and I led them to the valley of Cedron, and I narrated to them all that had been said to me.

6 And they lifted up their voice, and they all wept.

7 And we sat there and fasted until the evening.

## Chapter 6

1 And it came to pass on the morrow that, lo! The army of the Chaldees surrounded the city, and at the time of the evening, I, Baruch, left the people, and I went forth and stood by the oak.

2 And I was grieving over Zion, and lamenting over the captivity which had come upon the people.

3 And lo! Suddenly a strong spirit raised me, and bore me aloft over the wall of Jerusalem.

4 And I beheld, and lo! four angels standing at the four corners of the city, each of them holding a torch of fire in his hands.

5 And another angel began to descend from heaven, and said unto them: Hold your lamps, and do not light them till I tell you.

6 For I am first sent to speak a word to the earth, and to place in it what YHWH the Most High has commanded me.

7 And I saw him descend into the Holy of holies, and take from thence the veil, and the holy ark, and the mercy-seat, and the two tables, and the holy raiment of the priests, and the altar of incense, and the forty-eight precious stones, wherewith the priest was adorned and all the holy vessels of the tabernacle.

8 And he spake to the earth with a loud voice: Earth, earth, earth, hear the word of the mighty God, and receive what I commit to thee, and guard them until the last times, so that, when thou art ordered, thou mayst restore them, so that strangers may not get possession of them.

9 For the time comes when Jerusalem also will be delivered for a time, until it is said, that it is again restored for ever.

10 And the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up.

## Chapter 7

1 And after these things I heard that angel saying unto those angels who held the lamps: Destroy, therefore, and overthrow its wall to its foundations, lest the enemy should boast and say: We have overthrown the wall of Zion, And we have burnt the place of the mighty God.

2 And ye have seized the place where I had been standing before.

## Chapter 8

1 Now the angels did as he had commanded them, and when they had

broken up the corners of the walls, a voice was heard from the interior of the temple, after the wall had fallen, saying:

2 Enter, ye enemies, and come, ye adversaries; for he who kept the house has forsaken it.

3 And I, Baruch, departed.

4 And it came to pass after these things that the army of the Chaldees entered and seized the house, and all that was around it.

5 And they led the people away captive, and slew some of them, and bound Zedekiah the king, and sent him to the king of Babylon.

## Chapter 9

1 And I, Baruch, came, and Jeremiah, whose heart was found pure from sins, who had not been captured in the seizure of the city.

2 And we rent our garments, we wept, and mourned, and fasted seven days.

10

1 And it came to pass after seven days, that the word of God came to me, and said unto me:

1 Tell Jeremiah to go and support the captivity of the people unto Babylon, 3 but do thou remain here amid the desolation of Zion, and I will show to thee after these days' what will befall at the end of days.

4 And I said to Jeremiah as YHWH commanded me.

5 And he, indeed, departed with the people, but I, Baruch, returned and sat before the gates of the temple, and I lamented with the following lamentation over Zion and said:

6 Blessed is he who was not born, or he, who having been born, has died.

7 But as for us who live, woe unto us, because we see the afflictions of Zion, and what has befallen Jerusalem.

8 I will call the Sirens from the sea, and ye Lilin, come ye from the desert, and ye Shedim and dragons from the forests: awake and gird up your loins unto mourning, and take up with me the dirges, and make lamentation with me.

9 Ye husbandmen, sow not again; and, O earth, wherefore givest thou thy harvest fruits? Keep within thee the sweets of thy sustenance.

10 And thou, vine, why further dost thou give thy wine; for an offering will not again be made therefrom in Zion. Nor will the first-fruits again be offered.

11 And do ye, O heavens, withhold your dew, and open not the treasures of rain:

12 and do thou, O sun, withhold the light of thy rays. And do thou, O moon, extinguish the multitude of thy light; for why should light rise again where the light of Zion is darkened?

13 And you, ye bridegrooms, enter not in, and let not the brides adorn themselves with garlands.

14 And, ye women, pray not that ye may bear. For the barren shall above all rejoice, and those who have no sons shall be glad, and those who have sons shall have anguish.

15 For why should they bear in pain, only to bury in grief?

16 Or why, again, should mankind have sons? Or why should the seed of their kind again be named, where this mother is desolate, and her sons are led into captivity?

17 From this time forward speak not of beauty, and discourse not of gracefulness.

18 Moreover, ye priests, take ye the keys of the sanctuary and cast them into the height of heaven, and give them to YHWH and say: Guard Thy house Thyself. For lo! We are found false stewards.

19 And you, ye virgins; who weave fine linen And silk with gold of Ophir, Take with haste all these things and cast them into the fire, that it may bear them to Him who made them, and the flame send them to Him who created them, lest the enemy get possession of them.

## Chapter 11

1 Moreover, I, Baruch, say this against thee, Babylon: If thou hadst prospered, and Zion had dwelt in her glory, yet the grief to us had been great that thou shouldst be equal to Zion.

2 But now, lo! The grief is infinite, and the lamentation measureless, for lo! Thou art prospered And Zion desolate.

3 Who will be judge regarding these things? Or to whom shall we complain regarding that which has befallen us? O YHWH, how hast Thou borne it?

4 Our fathers went to rest without grief and lo! The righteous sleep in the earth in tranquillity;

5 for they knew not this anguish, nor yet had they heard of that which had befallen us.

6 Would that thou hadst ears, O earth, and that thou hadst a heart, O dust. That ye might go and announce in Sheol, and say to the dead:

7 Blessed are ye more than we who live.

## Chapter 12

1 But I will say this as I think. And I will speak against thee, O land, which

art prospering.

2 The noonday does not always burn. Nor do the rays of the sun constantly give light.

3 Do not expect and hope that thou wilt always be prosperous and rejoicing. And be not greatly up-lifted and boastful.

4 For assuredly in its own season shall the divine wrath awake against thee. Which now in long-suffering is held in as it were by reins.

5 And when I had said these things, I fasted seven days.

## Chapter 13

1 And it came to pass after these things, that I, Baruch, was standing upon Mount Zion, and lo! A voice came from the height and said unto me:

2 Stand upon thy feet, Baruch, and hear the word of the mighty God.

3 Because thou hast been astonished at what has befallen Zion, thou shalt therefore be assuredly preserved to the consummation of the times, that thou mayst be for a testimony.

4 So that, if ever those prosperous cities say: Why hath the mighty God brought upon us this retribution?

5 Say thou, to them, thou and those like thee who shall have seen this evil: This is the evil and retribution which is coming upon you and upon your people in its destined time that the nations may be thoroughly smitten.

6 And then they shall be in anguish.

7 And if they say at that time: For how long?

8 Thou wilt say to them: Ye who have drunk the strained wine, drink ye also of its dregs, the judgement of the Lofty One who has no respect of persons.

9 On this account he had aforetime no mercy on His own sons, But afflicted them as His enemies, because they sinned,

10 Then therefore were they chastened That they might be sanctified.

11 But now, ye peoples and nations, ye are guilty because ye have always trodden down the earth, and used the creation unrighteously.

12 For I have always benefitted you. And ye have always been ungrateful for the beneficence.

## Chapter 14

1 And I answered and said: Lo! Thou hast shown me the method of the times, and that which shall be alter these things, and Thou hast said unto me, that the retribution, which has been spoken of by Thee, shall come upon the nations.

2 And now I know that those who have sinned are many, and they have

lived in prosperity, and departed from the world, but that few nations will be left in those times, to whom those words shall be said which Thou didst say.

3 For what advantage is there in this, or what evil, worse than what we have seen befall us, are we to expect to see?

4 But again I will speak in Thy presence: What have they profited who had knowledge before Thee, and have not walked in vanity as the rest of the nations,

5 and have not said to the dead: Give us life, but always feared Thee, and have not left Thy ways?

6 And lo! They have been carried off, nor on their account hast Thou had mercy on Zion.

7 And if others did evil, it was due to Zion, that on account of the works of those who wrought good works she should be forgiven, and should not be overwhelmed on account of the works of those who wrought unrighteousness.

8 But who, O YHWH, my Lord, will comprehend Thy judgement, or who will search out the profoundness of Thy way? Or who will think out the weight of Thy path?

9 Or who will be able to think out Thy incomprehensible counsel? Or who of those that are born has ever found The beginning or end of Thy wisdom?

10 For we have all been made like a breath.

11 For as the breath ascends involuntarily, and again dies, so it is with the nature of men, who depart not according to their own will, and know not what will befall them in the end.

12 For the righteous justly hope for the end, and without fear depart from this habitation, because they have with Thee a store of works preserved in treasuries.

13 On this account also these without fear leave this world, and trusting with joy they hope to receive the world which Thou hast promised them.

14 But as for us- woe to us, who also are now shamefully entreated, and at that time look forward only to evils.

15 But Thou knowest accurately what Thou hast done by means of Thy servants; for we are not able to understand that which is good as Thou art, our Creator.

16 But again I will speak in Thy presence, O YHWH, my Lord.

17 When of old there was no world with its inhabitants, Thou didst devise and speak with a word, and forthwith the works of creation stood before Thee.

18 And Thou didst say that Thou wouldst make for Thy world man as the administrator of Thy works, that it might be known that he was by no



means made on account of the world, but the world on account of him.  
19 And now I see that as for the world which was made on account of us,  
lo! It abides, but we, on account of whom it was made, depart.

## Chapter 15

1 And YHWH answered and said unto me: Thou art rightly astonished regarding the departure of man, but thou hast not judged well regarding the evils which befall those who sin.  
2 And as regards what thou hast said, that the righteous are carried off and the impious are prospered,  
3 and as regards what thou hast said:  
4 Man knows not Thy judgement- On this account hear, and I will speak to thee, and hearken, and I will cause thee to hear My words.  
5 Man would not rightly have understood My judgement, unless he had accepted the law, and I had instructed him in understanding.  
6 But now, because he transgressed wittingly, yea, just on this ground that he wot thereof, he shall be tormented.  
7 And as regards what thou didst say touching the righteous, that on account of them has this world come, so also again shall that, which is to come, come on their account.  
8 For this world is to them a strife and a labour with much trouble; and that accordingly which is to come, a crown with great glory.

## Chapter 16

1 And I answered and said: O YHWH, my Lord, lo! The years of this time are few and evil, and who is able in his little time to acquire that which is measureless?

## Chapter 17

1 And YHWH answered and said unto me: With the Most High account is not taken of much time nor of a few years.  
2 For what did it profit Adam that he lived nine hundred and thirty years, and transgressed that which he was commanded?  
3 Therefore the multitude of time that he lived did not profit him, but brought death and cut off the years of those who were born from him.  
4 Or wherein did Moses suffer loss in that he lived only one hundred and twenty years, and, inasmuch as he was subject to Him who formed him, brought the law to the seed of Jacob, and lighted a lamp for the nation of Israel?

## Chapter 18

1 And I answered and said: He that lighted has taken from the light, and there are but few that have imitated him.

2 But those many whom he has lighted have taken from the darkness of Adam and have not rejoiced in the light of the lamp.

## Chapter 19

1 And He answered and said unto me: Wherefore at that time he appointed for them a covenant and said: Behold I have placed before you life and death, and he called heaven and earth to witness against them.

2 For he knew that his time was but short, but that heaven and earth endure always.

3 But after his death they sinned and transgressed, though they knew that they had the law reprovng them, and the light in which nothing could err, also the spheres which testify, and Me.

4 Now regarding everything that is, it is I that judge, but do not thou take counsel in thy soul regarding these things, nor afflict thyself because of those which have been.

5 For now it is the consummation of time that should be considered, whether of business, or of prosperity, or of shame, and not the beginning thereof.

6 Because if a man be prospered in his beginnings and shamefully entreated in his old age, he forgets all the prosperity that he had.

7 And again, if a man is shamefully entreated in his beginnings, and at his end is prospered, he remembereth not again his evil entreatment.

8 And again hearken: though each one were prospered all that time all the time from the day on which death was decreed against those who transgress, and in his end was destroyed, in vain would have been everything.

## Chapter 20

1 Therefore, behold! The days come, and the times shall hasten more than the former, and the seasons shall speed on more than those that are past, and the years shall pass more quickly than the present years.

2 Therefore have I now taken away Zion, that I may the more speedily visit the world in its season.

3 Now therefore hold fast in thy heart everything that I command thee, and seal it in the recesses of thy mind.

4 And then I will show thee the judgement of My might, and My ways which are unsearchable.

5 Go therefore and sanctify thyself seven days, and eat no bread, nor drink water, nor speak to anyone.

6 And afterwards come to that place and I will reveal Myself to thee, and speak true things with thee, and I will give thee commandment regarding the method of the times; for they are coming and tarry not.

## Chapter 21

1 And I went thence and sat in the valley of Cedron in a cave of the earth, and I sanctified my soul there, and I eat no bread, yet I was not hungry, and I drank no water, yet I thirsted not, and I was there till the seventh day, as He had commanded me.

2 And afterwards I came to that place where He had spoken with me.

3 And it came to pass at sunset that my soul took much thought, and I began to speak in the presence of the Mighty One, and said:

4 O Thou that hast made the earth, hear me, that hast fixed the firmament by the word, and hast made firm the height of the heaven by the spirit, that hast called from the beginning of the world that which did not yet exist, and they obey Thee.

5 Thou that hast commanded the air by Thy nod, and hast seen those things which are to be as those things which Thou art doing.

6 Thou that rulest with great thought the hosts that stand before Thee: also the countless holy beings, which Thou didst make from the beginning, of flame and fire, which stand around Thy throne Thou rulest with indignation.

7 To Thee only does this belong that Thou shouldst do forth with whatsoever Thou dost wish.

8 Who causeth the drops of rain to rain by number upon the earth, and alone knowest the consummation of the times before they come; have respect unto my prayer.

9 For Thou alone art able to sustain all who are, and those who have passed away, and those who are to be, those who sin, and those who are righteous as living and being past finding out.

10 For Thou alone dost live immortal and past finding out, and knowest the number of mankind.

11 And if in time many have sinned, yet others not a few have been righteous.

12 Thou knowest where Thou preservest the end of those who have sinned, or the consummation of those who have been righteous.

13 For if there were this life only, which belongs to all men, nothing could

be more bitter than this,

14 for of what profit is strength that turns to sickness, or fullness of food that turns to famine, or beauty that turns to ugliness.

15 For the nature of man is always changeable.

16 For what we were formerly now we no longer are, and what we now are we shall not afterwards remain.

17 For if a consummation had not been prepared for all, in vain would have been their beginning.

18 But regarding everything that comes from Thee, do Thou inform me, and regarding everything about which I ask Thee, do Thou enlighten me.

19 How long will that which is corruptible remain, and how long will the time of mortals be prospered, and until what time will those who transgress in the world be polluted with much wickedness?

20 Command therefore in mercy and accomplish all that Thou saidst Thou wouldst bring, that Thy might may be made known to those who think that Thy long-suffering is weakness.

21 And show to those who know not, that everything that has befallen us and our city until now has been according to the long-suffering of Thy power, because on account of Thy name Thou hast called us a beloved people.

22 Bring to an end therefore henceforth mortality.

23 And reprove accordingly the angel of death, and let Thy glory appear, and let the might of Thy beauty be known, and let Sheol be sealed so that from this time forward it may not receive the dead, and let the treasuries of souls restore those which are enclosed in them.

24 For there have been many years like those that are desolate from the days of Abraham and Isaac and Jacob, and of all those who are like them, who sleep in the earth, on whose account Thou didst say that Thou hadst created the world.

25 And now quickly show Thy glory, and do not defer what has been promised by Thee.

26 And when I had completed the words of this prayer I was greatly weakened.

## Chapter 22

1 And it came to pass after these things that lo! The heavens were opened, and I saw, and power was given to me, and a voice was heard from on high, and it said unto me:

2 Baruch, Baruch, why art thou troubled?

3 He who travels by a road but does not complete it, or who departs by sea but does not arrive at the port, can he be comforted?

4 Or he who promises to give a present to another, but does not fulfill it, is it not robbery?

5 Or he who sows the earth, but does not reap its fruit in its season, does he not lose everything?

6 Or he who plants a plant unless it grows till the time suitable to it, does he who planted it expect to receive fruit from it?

7 Or a woman who has conceived, if she bring forth untimely, does she not assuredly slay her infant?

8 Or he who builds a house, if he does not roof it and complete it, can it be called a house? Tell Me that first.

## Chapter 23

1 And I answered and said: Not so, O YHWH, my Lord.

2 And He answered and said unto me: Why therefore art thou troubled about that which thou knowest not, and why art thou ill at ease about things in which thou art ignorant?

3 For as thou hast not forgotten the people who now are and those who have passed away, so I remember those who are appointed to come.

4 Because when Adam sinned and death was decreed against those who should be born, then the multitude of those who should be born was numbered, and for that number a place was prepared where the living might dwell and the dead might be guarded.

5 Before therefore the number aforesaid is fulfilled, the creature will not live again, for My spirit is the creator of life, and Sheol will receive the dead.

6 And again it is given to thee to hear what things are to come after these times.

7 For truly My redemption has drawn nigh, and is not far distant as aforetime.

## Chapter 24

1 For behold! The days come and the books shall be opened in which are written the sins of all those who have sinned, and again also the treasuries in which the righteousness of all those who have been righteous in creation is gathered.

2 For it shall come to pass at that time that thou shalt see- and the many that are with thee- the long-suffering of the Most High, which has been throughout all generations, who has been long-suffering towards all who are born, alike those who sin and those who are righteous.

3 And I answered and said: But, behold! O YHWH, no one knows the

number of those things which have passed nor yet of those things which are to come.

4 For I know indeed that which has befallen us, but what will happen to our enemies I know not, and when Thou wilt visit Thy works.

## Chapter 25

1 And He answered and said unto me: Thou too shalt be preserved till that time till that sign which the Most High will work for the inhabitants of the earth in the end of days.

2 This therefore shall be the sign.

3 When a stupor shall seize the inhabitants of the earth, and they shall fall into many tribulations, and again when they shall fall into great torments.

4 And it will come to pass when they say in their thoughts by reason of their much tribulation: The Mighty One doth no longer remember the earth; Yea, it will come to pass when they abandon hope, that the time will then awake.

## Chapter 26

1 And I answered and said: Will that tribulation which is to be continue a long time, and will that necessity embrace many years?

## Chapter 27

1 And He answered and said unto me: Into twelve parts is that time divided, and each one of them is reserved for that which is appointed for it.

2 In the first part there shall be the beginning of commotions.

3 And in the second part there shall be slayings of the great ones.

4 And in the third part the fall of many by death.

5 And in the fourth part the sending of the sword.

6 And in the fifth part famine and the withholding of rain.

7 And in the sixth part earthquakes and terrors.

8 (And in the seventh part..)

9 And in the eighth part a multitude of spectres and attacks of the Shedim.

10 And in the ninth part the fall of fire.

11 And in the tenth part rapine and much oppression,

12 And in the eleventh part wickedness and unchastity.

13 And in the twelfth part confusion from the mingling together of all those things aforesaid.

14 For these parts of that time are reserved, and shall be mingled one with

another and minister one to another.

15 For some shall leave out some of their own, and receive in its stead from others, and some complete their own and that of others, so that those may not understand who are upon the earth in those days that this is the consummation of the times.

## Chapter 28

1 Nevertheless, whosoever understandeth shall then be wise.

2 For the measure and reckoning of that time are two parts a week of seven weeks.

3 And I answered and said: It is good for a man to come and behold, but it is better that he should not come lest he fall.

4 But I will say this also:

5 Will he who is incorruptible despise those things which are corruptible, and whatever befalls in the case of those things which are corruptible, so that he might look only to those things which are not corruptible?

6 But if, O YHWH, those things shall assuredly come to pass which Thou hast foretold to me, so do Thou show this also unto me if indeed I have found grace in Thy sight.

7 Is it in one place or in one of the parts of the earth that those things are come to pass, or will the whole earth experience them?

## Chapter 29

1 And He answered and said unto me: Whatever will then befall will befall the whole earth; therefore all who live will experience them.

2 For at that time I will protect only those who are found in those self-same days in this land.

3 And it shall come to pass when all is accomplished that 4 was to come to pass in those parts, that the Messiah shall then begin to be revealed. And Behemoth shall be revealed from his place and Leviathan shall ascend from the sea, those two great monsters which I created on the fifth day of creation, and shall have kept until that time; and then they shall be for food for all that are left.

5 The earth also shall yield its fruit ten thousandfold and on each vine there shall be a thousand branches, and each branch shall produce a thousand clusters, and each cluster produce a thousand grapes, and each grape produce a cor of wine.

6 And those who have hungered shall rejoice: moreover, also, they shall behold marvels every day.

7 For winds shall go forth from before Me to bring every morning the

fragrance of aromatic fruits, and at the close of the day clouds distilling the dew of health.

8 And it shall come to pass at that self-same time that the treasury of manna shall again descend from on high, and they will eat of it in those years, because these are they who have come to the consummation of time.

### Chapter 30

1 And it shall come to pass after these things, when the time of the advent of the Messiah is fulfilled, that He shall return in glory.

2 Then all who have fallen asleep in hope of Him shall rise again. And it shall come to pass at that time that the treasuries will be opened in which is preserved the number of the souls of the righteous, and they shall come forth, and a multitude of souls shall be seen together in one assemblage of one thought, and the first shall rejoice and the last shall not be grieved.

3 For they know that the time has come of which it is said, that it is the consummation of the times.

4 But the souls of the wicked, when they behold all these things, shall then waste away the more.

5 For they shall know that their torment has come and their perdition has arrived.

### Chapter 31

1 And it came to pass after these things: that I went to the people and said unto them: Assemble unto me all your elders and I will speak words unto them.

2 And they all assembled in the valley of the Cedron.

3 And I answered and said unto them: Hear, O Israel, and I will speak to thee, and give ear, O seed of Jacob, and I will instruct thee.

4 Forget not Zion, but hold in remembrance the anguish of Jerusalem.

5 For lo! The days come, when everything that is shall become the prey of corruption and be as though it had not been.

### Chapter 32

1 But as for you, if ye prepare your hearts, so as to sow in them the fruits of the law, it shall protect you in that time in which the Mighty One is to shake the whole creation.

2 Because after a little time the building of Zion will be shaken in order that it may be built again.

3 But that building will not remain, but will again after a time be rooted



out, and will remain desolate until the time.

4 And afterwards it must be renewed in glory, and perfected for evermore.

5 Therefore we should not be distressed so much over the evil which has now come as over that which is still to be.

6 For there will be a greater trial than these two tribulations when the Mighty One will renew His creation.

7 And now do not draw near to me for a few days, nor seek me till I come to you.

8 And it came to pass when I had spoken to them all these words, that I, Baruch, went my way, and when the people saw me setting out, they lifted up their voice and lamented and said:

9 Whither departest thou from us, Baruch, and forsakest us as a father who forsakes his orphan children, and departs from them?

### Chapter 33

1 Are these the commands which thy companion, Jeremiah the prophet, commanded thee, and said unto thee:

2 Look to this people till I go and make ready the rest of the brethren in Babylon, against whom has gone forth the sentence that they should be led into captivity?

3 And now if thou also forsakest us, it were good for us all to die before thee, and then that thou shouldst withdraw from us.

### Chapter 34

1 And I answered and said unto the people: Far be it from me to forsake you or to withdraw from you, but I will only go unto the Holy of Holies to inquire of the Mighty One concerning you and concerning Zion, if in some respect I should receive more illumination: and after these things I will return to you.

### Chapter 35

1 And I, Baruch, went to the holy place, and sat down upon the ruins and wept, and said:

2 O that mine eyes were springs, and mine eyelids a fount of tears.

3 For how shall I lament for Zion, and how shall I mourn for Jerusalem?

4 Because in that place where I am now prostrate, of old the high priest offered holy sacrifices, and placed thereon an incense of fragrant odours.

5 But now our glorying has been made into dust, and the desire of our soul into sand.

## Chapter 36

1 And when I had said these things I fell asleep there, and I saw a vision in the night.

2 And lo! A forest of trees planted on the plain, and lofty and rugged rocky mountains surrounded it, and that forest occupied much space.

3 And lo! Over against it arose a vine, and from under it there went forth a fountain peacefully.

4 Now that fountain came to the forest and was stirred into great waves, and those waves submerged that forest, and suddenly they rooted out the greater part of that forest, and overthrew all the mountains which were round about it.

5 And the height of the forest began to be made low, and the top of the mountains was made low and that fountain prevailed greatly, so that it left nothing of that great forest save one cedar only.

6 Also when it had cast it down and had destroyed and rooted out the greater part of that forest, so that nothing was left of it, nor could its place be recognized, then that vine began to come with the fountain in peace and great tranquillity, and it came to a place which was not far from that cedar, and they brought the cedar which had been cast down to it.

7 And I beheld and lo! that vine opened its mouth and spake and said to that cedar: Art thou not that cedar which was left of the forest of wickedness, and by whose means wickedness persisted, and was wrought all those years, and goodness never.

8 And thou didst keep conquering that which was not thine, and to that which was thine thou didst never show compassion, and thou didst keep extending thy power over those who were far from thee, and those who drew nigh thee thou didst hold fast in the toils of thy wickedness, and thou didst uplift thyself always as one that could not be rooted out!

9 But now thy time has sped and thine hour is come.

10 Do thou also therefore depart O cedar, after the forest, which departed before thee, and become dust with it.

11 And let your ashes be mingled together, and now recline in anguish and rest in torment till thy last time come, in which thou wilt come again, and be tormented still more.

## Chapter 37

1 And after these things I saw that cedar burning, and the vine glowing, itself and all around it, the plain full of unfading flowers. And I indeed awoke and arose.

## Chapter 38

- 1 And I prayed and said: O YHWH, my Lord, Thou dost always enlighten those who are led by understanding.
- 2 Thy law is life, and Thy wisdom is right guidance.
- 3 Make known to me therefore the interpretation of this vision.
- 4 For Thou knowest that my soul hath always walked in Thy law, and from my earliest days I departed not from Thy wisdom.

## Chapter 39

- 1 And He answered and said unto me: Baruch, this is the interpretation of the vision which thou hast seen.
- 2 As thou hast seen the great forest which lofty and rugged mountains surrounded, this is the word.
- 3 Behold! The days come, and this kingdom will be destroyed which once destroyed Zion, and it will be subjected to that which comes after it.
- 4 Moreover, that also again after a time will be destroyed, and another, a third, will arise, and that also will have dominion for its time, and will be destroyed.
- 5 And after these things a fourth kingdom will arise, whose power will be harsh and evil far beyond those which were before it, and it will rule many times as the forests on the plain, and it will hold fast for times, and will exalt itself more than the cedars of Lebanon.
- 6 And by it the truth will be hidden, and all those who are polluted with iniquity will flee to it, as evil beasts flee and creep into the forest.
- 7 And it will come to pass when the time of its consummation that it should fall has approached, then the principate of My Messiah will be revealed, which is like the fountain and the vine, and when it is revealed it will root out the multitude of its host.
- 8 And as touching that which thou hast seen, the lofty cedar, which was left of that forest, and the fact, that the vine spoke those words with it which thou didst hear, this is the word.

## Chapter 40

- 1 The last leader of that time will be left alive, when the multitude of his hosts will be put to the sword, and he will be bound, and they will take him up to Mount Zion, and My Messiah will convict him of all his impieties, and will gather and set before him all the works of his hosts.
- 2 And afterwards he will put him to death, and protect the rest of My

people which shall be found in the place which I have chosen.

3 And his principate will stand for ever, until the world of corruption is at an end, and until the times aforesaid are fulfilled.

4 This is thy vision, and this is its interpretation.

## Chapter 41

1 And I answered and said: For whom and for how many shall these things be? Or who will be worthy to live at that time?

2 For I will speak before thee everything that I think, and I will ask of Thee regarding those things which I meditate.

3 For lo! I see many of Thy people who have with drawn from Thy covenant, and cast from them the yoke of Thy law.

4 But others again I have seen who have forsaken their vanity, and fled for refuge beneath Thy wings.

5 What therefore will be to them? Or how will the last time receive them?

6 Or perhaps the time of these will assuredly be weighed, and as the beam inclines will they be judged accordingly?

## Chapter 42

1 And He answered and said unto me:

2 These things also will I show unto thee. As for what thou didst say- To whom will these things be, and how many will they be? To those who have believed there shall be the good which was spoken of aforetime, and to those who despise there shall be the contrary of these things.

3 And as for what thou didst say regarding those who have drawn near and those who have withdrawn this is the word.

4 As for those who were before subject, and afterwards withdrew and mingled themselves with the seed of mingled peoples, the time of these was the former, and was accounted as something exalted.

5 And as for those who before knew not but afterwards knew life, and mingled only with the seed of the people which had separated itself the time of these is the latter, and is accounted as something exalted.

6 And time shall succeed to time and season to season, and one shall receive from another, and then with a view to the consummation shall everything be compared according to the measure of the times and the hours of the seasons.

7 For corruption shall take those that belong to it, and life those that belong to it.

8 And the dust shall be called, and there shall be said to it: Give back that which is not thine, and raise up all that thou hast kept until its time.

## Chapter 43

1 But, do thou, Baruch, direct thy heart to that which has been said to thee, and understand those things which have been shown to thee; for there are many eternal consolations for thee.

2 For thou shalt depart from this place, and thou shalt pass from the regions which are now seen by thee, and thou shalt forget whatever is corruptible, and shalt not again recall those things which happen among mortals.

3 Go therefore and command thy people, and come to this place, and afterwards fast seven days, and then I will come to thee and speak with thee.

## Chapter 44

1 And I, Baruch, went from thence, and came to my people, and I called my first-born son and the Gedaliahs my friends, and seven of the elders of the people, and I said unto them:

2 Behold, I go unto my fathers according to the way of all the earth.

3 But withdraw ye not from the way of the law, but guard and admonish the people which remain; lest they withdraw from the commandments of the Mighty One.

4 For ye see that He whom we serve is just, and our Creator is no respecter of persons.

5 And see ye what hath befallen Zion, and what hath happened to Jerusalem.

6 For the judgement of the Mighty One shall thereby be made known, and His ways, which, though past finding out, are right.

7 For if ye endure and persevere in His fear, and do not forget His law, the times shall change over you for good. And ye shall see the consolation of Zion.

8 Because whatever is now is nothing, but that which shall be is very great.

9 For everything that is corruptible shall pass away, and everything that dies shall depart, and all the present time shall be forgotten, nor shall there be any remembrance of the present time, which is defiled with evils.

10 For that which runs now runs unto vanity, and that which prospers shall quickly fall and be humiliated.

11 For that which is to be shall be the object of desire, and for that which comes afterwards shall we hope; for it is a time that passes not away, and the hour comes which abides for ever.

12 And the new world comes which does not turn to corruption those

who depart to its blessedness, and has no mercy on those who depart to torment, and leads not to perdition those who live in it.

13 For these are they who shall inherit that time which has been spoken of, and theirs is the inheritance of the promised time.

14 These are they who have acquired for themselves treasures of wisdom, and with them are found stores of understanding, and from mercy have they not withdrawn, and the truth of the law have they preserved.

15 For to them shall be given the world to come, but the dwelling of the rest who are many shall be in the fire.

## Chapter 45

1 Do ye therefore so far as ye are able instruct the people, for that labour is ours. For if ye teach them, ye will quicken them.

## Chapter 46

1 And my son and the elders of the people answered and said unto me: Has the Mighty One humiliated us to such a degree as to take thee from us quickly?

2 And truly we shall be in darkness, and there shall be no light to the people who are left.

3 For where again shall we seek the law, or who will distinguish for us between death and life?

4 And I said unto them: The throne of the Mighty One I cannot resist; nevertheless, there shall not be wanting to Israel a wise man nor a son of the law to the race of Jacob.

5 But only prepare ye your hearts, that ye may obey the law, and be subject to those who in fear are wise and understanding; and prepare your souls that ye may not depart from them.

6 For if ye do these things, Good tidings shall come unto you. Which I before told you of; nor shall ye fall into the torment, of which I testified to you before.

7 But with regard to the word that I was to be taken I did not make it known to them or to my son.

## Chapter 47

1 And when I had gone forth and dismissed them, I went thence and said unto them: Behold! I go to Hebron: for thither the Mighty One hath sent me.

2 And I came to that place where the word had been spoken unto me, and

I sat there, and fasted seven days.

## Chapter 48

1 And it came to pass after the seventh day, that I prayed before the Mighty One and said:

2 O my Lord, Thou summonest the advent of the times, and they stand before Thee; Thou causest the power of the ages to pass away, and they do not resist Thee; Thou arrangest the method of the seasons, and they obey Thee.

3 Thou alone knowest the duration of the generations, and Thou revealest not Thy mysteries to many.

4 Thou makest known the multitude of the fire, and Thou weighest the lightness of the wind.

5 Thou explorest the limit of the heights, and Thou scrutinizest the depths of the darkness.

6 Thou carest for the number which pass away that they may be preserved, and Thou preparest an abode for those that are to be.

7 Thou rememberest the beginning which Thou hast made, and the destruction that is to be Thou forgettest not.

8 With nods of fear and indignation Thou commandest the flames, and they change into spirits, and with a word Thou quickenest that which was not, and with mighty power Thou holdest that which has not yet come.

9 Thou instructest created things in the understanding of Thee, and Thou makest wise the spheres so as to minister in their orders.

10 Armies innumerable stand before Thee and minister in their orders quietly at Thy nod.

11 Hear Thy servant And give ear to my petition.

12 For in a little time are we born, and in a little time do we return.

13 But with Thee hours are as a time, and days as generations.

14 Be not therefore wroth with man; for he is nothing.

15 And take not account of our works; for what are we? For lo! By Thy gift do we come into the world, and we depart not of our own will.

16 For we said not to our parents, Beget us. Nor did we send to Sheol and say, Receive us.

17 What therefore is our strength that we should bear Thy wrath, or what are we that we should endure Thy judgement?

18 Protect us in Thy compassions, and in Thy mercy help us.

19 Behold the little ones that are subject unto Thee, and save all that draw nigh unto Thee: and destroy not the hope of our people, and cut not short the times of our aid.

20 For this is the nation which Thou hast chosen, and these are the people,

to whom Thou findest no equal.

21 But I will speak now before Thee, and I will say as my heart thinketh.

22 In Thee do we trust, for lo! Thy law is with us, and we know that we shall not fall so long as we keep Thy statutes.

23 To all time are we blessed at all events in this that we have not mingled with the Gentiles.

24 For we are all one celebrated people, who have received one law from One: and the law which is amongst us will aid us, and the surpassing wisdom which is in us will help us.

25 And when I had prayed and said these things, I was greatly weakened.

26 And He answered and said unto me: Thou hast prayed simply, O Baruch, and all thy words have been heard.

27 But My judgement exacts its own, and My law exacts its rights.

28 For from thy words I will answer thee, and from thy prayer I will speak to thee.

29 For this is as follows: he that is corrupted is not at all; he has both wrought iniquity so far as he could do anything, and has not remembered My goodness, nor accepted My long-suffering.

30 Therefore thou shalt surely be taken up, as I before told thee.

31 For that time shall arise which brings affliction; for it shall come and pass by with quick vehemence, and it shall be turbulent coming in the heat of indignation.

32 And it shall come to pass in those days that all the inhabitants of the earth shall be moved one against another, because they know not that My judgement has drawn nigh.

33 For there shall not be found many wise at that time, and the intelligent shall be but a few: moreover, even those who know shall most of all be silent.

34 And there shall be many rumours and tidings not a few, and the doings of phantasmata shall be manifest, and promises not a few be recounted. Some of them shall prove idle, and some of them shall be confirmed.

35 And honour shall be turned into shame, and strength humiliated into contempt, and probity destroyed, and beauty shall become ugliness.

36 And many shall say to many at that time: Where hath the multitude of intelligence hidden itself, and whither hath the multitude of wisdom removed itself?

37 And whilst they are meditating these things, then envy shall arise in those who had not thought aught of themselves and passion shall seize him that is peaceful, and many shall be stirred up in anger to injure many, and they shall rouse up armies in order to shed blood, and in the end they shall perish together with them.

38 And it shall come to pass at the self-same time, that a change of times



shall manifestly appear to every man, because in all those times they polluted themselves And they practised oppression, and walked every man in his own works, and remembered not the law of the Mighty One.

39 Therefore a fire shall consume their thoughts, and in flame shall the meditations of their reins be tried; for the Judge shall come and will not tarry.

40 Because each of the inhabitants of the earth knew when he was transgressing. But My Law they knew not by reason of their pride.

41 But many shall then assuredly weep, yea, over the living more than over the dead.

42 And I answered and said: O Adam, what hast thou done to all those who are born from thee? And what will be said to the first Eve who hearkened to the serpent?

43 For all this multitude are going to corruption, nor is there any numbering of those whom the fire devours.

44 But again I will speak in Thy presence.

45 Thou, O YHWH, my Lord, knowest what is in Thy creature.

46 For Thou didst of old command the dust to produce Adam, and Thou knowest the number of those who are born from him, and how far they have sinned before Thee, who have existed and not confessed Thee as their Creator.

47 And as regards all these their end shall convict them, and Thy law which they have transgressed shall requite them on Thy day.

48 But now let us dismiss the wicked and inquire about the righteous.

49 And I will recount their blessedness And not be silent in celebrating their glory, which is reserved for them.

50 For assuredly as in a little time in this transitory world in which ye live, ye have endured much labour, so in that world to which there is no end, ye shall receive great light.

## Chapter 49

1 Nevertheless, I will again ask from Thee, O Mighty One, yea, I will ask mercy from Him who made all things.

2 In what shape will those live who live in Thy day? Or how will the splendour of those who are after that time continue?

3 Will they then resume this form of the present, and put on these entrammelling members, which are now involved in evils, and in which evils are consummated, or wilt Thou perchance change these things which have been in the world as also the world?

## Chapter 50

1 And He answered and said unto me: Hear, Baruch, this word, and write in the remembrance of thy heart all that thou shalt learn.

2 For the earth shall then assuredly restore the dead, which it now receives, in order to preserve them. It shall make no change in their form, but as it has received, so shall it restore them, and as I delivered them unto it, so also shall it raise them.

3 For then it will be necessary to show to the living that the dead have come to life again, and that those who had departed have returned again.

4 And it shall come to pass, when they have severally recognized those whom they now know, then judgement shall grow strong, and those things which before were spoken of shall come.

## Chapter 51

1 And it shall come to pass, when that appointed day has gone by, that then shall the aspect of those who are condemned be afterwards changed, and the glory of those who are justified.

2 For the aspect of those who now act wickedly shall become worse than it is, as they shall suffer torment.

3 Also as for the glory of those who have now been justified in My law, who have had understanding in their life, and who have planted in their heart the root of wisdom, then their splendour shall be glorified in changes, and the form of their face shall be turned into the light of their beauty, that they may be able to acquire and receive the world which does not die, which is then promised to them.

4 For over this above all shall those who come then lament, that they rejected My law, and stopped their ears that they might not hear wisdom or receive understanding.

5 When therefore they see those, over whom they are now exalted, but who shall then be exalted and glorified more than they, they shall respectively be transformed, the latter into the splendour of angels, and the former shall yet more waste away in wonder at the visions and in the beholding of the forms.

6 For they shall first behold and afterwards depart to be tormented.

7 But those who have been saved by their works. And to whom the law has been now a hope, and understanding an expectation, and wisdom a confidence, shall wonders appear in their time.

8 For they shall behold the world which is now invisible to them, and they shall behold the time which is now hidden from them:

9 and time shall no longer age them.

10 For in the heights of that world shall they dwell, and they shall be made

like unto the angels, and be made equal to the stars, and they shall be changed into every form they desire, from beauty into loveliness, and from light into the splendour of glory.

11 For there shall be spread before them the extents of Paradise, and there shall be shown to them the beauty of the majesty of the living creatures which are beneath the throne, and all the armies of the angels, who are now held fast by My word, lest they should appear, and are held fast by a command, that they may stand in their places till their advent comes.

12 Moreover, there shall then be excellency in the righteous surpassing that in the angels.

13 For the first shall receive the last, those whom they were expecting, and the last those of whom they used to hear that they had passed away.

14 For they have been delivered from this world of tribulation, and laid down the burden of anguish.

15 For what then have men lost their life, And for what have those who were on the earth exchanged their soul?

16 For then they chose not for themselves this time, which, beyond the reach of anguish, could not pass away: but they chose for themselves that time, Whose issues are full of lamentations and evils, and they denied the world which ages not those who come to it, and they rejected the time of glory, so that they shall not come to the honour of which I told thee before.

## Chapter 52

1 And I answered and said: how can we forget those for whom woe is then reserved?

2 And why therefore do we again mourn for those who die? Or why do we weep for those who depart to Sheol?

3 Let lamentations be reserved for the beginning of that coming torment, and let tears be laid up for the advent of the destruction of that time.

4 But even in the face of these things will I speak.

5 And as for the righteous, what will they do now?

6 Rejoice ye in the suffering which ye now suffer: for why do ye look for the decline of your enemies?

7 Make ready your soul for that which is reserved for you, and prepare your souls for the reward which is laid up for you.

## Chapter 53

1 And when I had said these things I fell asleep there, and I saw a vision, and lo! A cloud was ascending from a very great sea, and I kept gazing

upon it, and lo! It was full of waters white and black, and there were many colours in those self-same waters, and as it were the likeness of great lightning was seen at its summit.

2 And I saw the cloud passing swiftly in quick courses, and it covered all the earth.

3 And it came to pass after these things that cloud began to pour upon the earth the waters that were in it.

4 And I saw that there was not one and the same likeness in the waters which descended from it.

5 For in the first beginning they were black and many for a time, and afterwards I saw that the waters became bright, but they were not many, and after these things again I saw black waters, and after these things again bright, and again black and again bright.

6 Now this was done twelve times, but the black were always more numerous than the bright.

7 And it came to pass at the end of the cloud, that lo! it rained black waters, and they were darker than had been all those waters that were before, and fire was mingled with them, and where those waters descended, they wrought devastation and destruction.

8 And after these things I saw how that lightning which I had seen on the summit of the cloud, seized hold of it and hurled it to the earth.

9 Now that lightning shone exceedingly, so as to illuminate the whole earth, and it healed those regions where the last waters had descended and wrought devastation.

10 And it took hold of the whole earth, and had dominion over it.

11 And I saw after these things, and lo! Twelve rivers were ascending from the sea, and they began to surround that lightning and to become subject to it.

12 And by reason of my fear I awoke.

## Chapter 54

1 And I besought the Mighty One, and said: Thou alone, O YHWH, knowest of aforetime the deep things of the world, and the things which befall in their times Thou bringest about by Thy word, and against the works of the inhabitants of the earth Thou dost hasten the beginnings of the times, and the end of the seasons Thou alone knowest.

2 Thou for whom nothing is too hard, but who dost everything easily by a nod:

3 Thou to whom the depths come as the heights, and whose word the beginnings of the ages serve:

4 Thou who revealest to those who fear Thee what is prepared for them,

that thenceforth they may be comforted.

5 Thou showest great acts to those who know not; Thou breakest up the enclosure of those who are ignorant, and lightest up what is dark, and revealest what is hidden to the pure, who in faith have submitted themselves to Thee and Thy law.

6 Thou hast shown to Thy servant this vision; reveal to me also its interpretation.

7 For I know that as regards those things wherein I besought Thee, I have received a response, and as regards what I besought, Thou didst reveal to me with what voice I should praise Thee, and from what members I should cause praises and hallelujahs to ascend to Thee.

8 For if my members were mouths, and the hairs of my head voices, even so I could not give Thee the meed of praise, nor laud Thee as is befitting, nor could I recount Thy praise, nor tell the glory of Thy beauty.

9 For what am I amongst men, or why am I reckoned amongst those who are more excellent than I, that I have heard all these marvelous things from the Most High, and numberless promises from Him who created me?

10 Blessed be my mother among those that bear, and praised among women be she that bare me.

11 For I will not be silent in praising the Mighty One, and with the voice of praise I will recount His marvellous deeds.

12 For who doeth like unto Thy marvellous deeds, O God, or who comprehendeth Thy deep thought of life.

13 For with Thy counsel Thou dost govern all the creatures which Thy right hand has created, and Thou hast established every fountain of light beside Thee, and the treasures of wisdom beneath Thy throne hast Thou prepared.

14 And justly do they perish who have not loved Thy law, and the torment of judgement shall await those who have not submitted themselves to Thy power.

15 For though Adam first sinned And brought untimely death upon all, yet of those who were born from him, each one of them has prepared for his own soul torment to come, and again each one of them has chosen for himself glories to come.

16 For assuredly he who believeth will receive reward.

17 But now, as for you, ye wicked that now are, turn ye to destruction, because ye shall speedily be visited, in that formerly ye rejected the understanding of the Most High.

18 For His works have not taught you, nor has the skill of His creation which is at all times persuaded you.

19 Adam is therefore not the cause, save only of his own soul, but each of us has been the Adam of his own soul.

20 But do Thou, O YHWH, expound to me regarding those things which Thou hast revealed to me, and inform me regarding that which I besought Thee.

21 For at the consummation of the world vengeance shall be taken upon those who have done wickedness according to their wickedness, and Thou wilt glorify the faithful according to their faithfulness.

22 For those who are amongst Thine own Thou rulest, and those who sin Thou blottest out from amongst Thine own.

## Chapter 55

1 And it came to pass when I had finished speaking the words of this prayer, that I sat there under a tree, that I might rest in the shade of the branches.

2 And I wondered and was astonished, and pondered in my thoughts regarding the multitude of goodness which sinners who are upon the earth have rejected, and regarding the great torment which they have despised, though they knew that they should be tormented because of the sin they had committed.

3 And when I was pondering on these things and the like, lo! the angel Ramiel who presides over true visions was sent to me, and he said unto me:

4 Why does thy heart trouble thee, Baruch, and why does thy thought disturb thee?

5 For if owing to the report which thou hast only heard of judgement thou art so moved, What wilt thou be when thou shalt see it manifestly with thine eyes?

6 And if with the expectation wherewith thou dost expect the day of the Mighty One thou art so overcome, what wilt thou be when thou shalt come to its advent?

7 And, if at the word of the announcement of the torment of those who have done foolishly thou art so wholly distraught, how much more when the event will reveal marvellous things?

8 And if thou hast heard tidings of the good and evil things which are then coming and art grieved, what wilt thou be when thou shalt behold what the majesty will reveal, which shall convict these and cause those to rejoice.

## Chapter 56

1 Nevertheless, because thou hast besought the Most High to reveal to thee the interpretation of the vision which thou hast seen, I have been sent to tell thee.

2 And the Mighty One hath assuredly made known to thee the methods of

the times that have passed, and of those that are destined to pass in His world from the beginning of its creation even unto its consummation, of those things which are deceit and of those which are in truth.

3 For as thou didst see a great cloud which ascended from the sea, and went and covered the earth, this is the duration of the world which the Mighty One made when He took counsel to make the world.

4 And it came to pass when the word had gone forth from His presence, that the duration of the world had come into being in a small degree, and was established according to the multitude of the intelligence of Him who sent it.

5 And as thou didst previously see on the summit of the cloud black waters which descended previously on the earth, this is the transgression wherewith Adam the first man transgressed.

6 For since when he transgressed untimely death came into being, grief was named and anguish was prepared, and pain was created, and trouble consummated, and disease began to be established, and Sheol kept demanding that it should be renewed in blood, and the begetting of children was brought about, and the passion of parents produced, and the greatness of humanity was humiliated, and goodness languished.

7 What therefore can be blacker or darker than these things?

8 This is the beginning of the black waters which thou hast seen.

9 And from these black waters again were black derived, and the darkness of darkness was produced.

10 For he became a danger to his own soul: even to the angels became he a danger.

11 For, moreover, at that time when he was created, they enjoyed liberty.

12 And some of them descended, and mingled with the women.

13 And then those who did so were tormented in chains.

14 But the rest of the multitude of the angels, of which there is no number, restrained

15 themselves. And those who dwelt on the earth perished together with them through the waters of the deluge.

16 These are the black first waters.

## Chapter 57

1 And after these waters thou didst see bright waters: this is the fount of Abraham, also his generations and advent of his son, and of his son's son, and of those like them.

2 Because at that time the unwritten law was named amongst them, and the works of the commandments were then fulfilled, and belief in the coming judgement was then generated, and hope of the world that was to be

renewed was then built up, and the promise of the life that should come hereafter was implanted.

3 These are the bright waters, which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 58

1 And the black third waters which thou hast seen, these are the mingling of all sins, which the nations afterwards wrought after the death of those righteous men, and the wickedness of the land of Egypt, wherein they did wickedly in the service wherewith they made their sons to serve.

2 Nevertheless, these also perished at last.

## Chapter 59

1 And the bright fourth waters which thou hast seen are the advent of Moses and Aaron and Miriam and Joshua the son of Nun and Caleb and of all those like them.

2 For at that time the lamp of the eternal law shone on all those who sat in darkness, which announced to them that believe the promise of their reward, and to them that deny, the torment of fire which is reserved for them.

3 But also the heavens at that time were shaken from their place, and those who were under the throne of the Mighty One were perturbed, when He was taking Moses unto Himself.

4 For He showed him many admonitions together with the principles of the law and the consummation of the times, as also to thee, and likewise the pattern of Zion and its measures, in the pattern of which the sanctuary of the present time was to be made.

5 But then also He showed to him the measures of the fire, also the depths of the abyss, and the weight of the winds, and the number of the drops of rain:

6 and the suppression of anger, and the multitude of long-suffering, and the truth of judgement:

7 and the root of wisdom, and the riches of understanding, and the fount of knowledge:

8 and the height of the air, and the greatness of Paradise, and the consummation of the ages, and the beginning of the day of judgement:

9 and the number of the offerings, and the earths which have not yet come:

10 and the mouth of Gehenna, and the station of vengeance, and the place of faith, and the region of hope:

11 and the likeness of future torment, and the multitude of innumerable



angels, and the flaming hosts, and the splendour of the lightning and the voice of the thunders, and the orders of the chiefs of the angels, and the treasuries of light, and the changes of the times, and the investigations of the law.

12 These are the bright fourth waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 60

1 And the black fifth waters which thou hast seen raining are the works which the Amorites wrought, and the spells of their incantations which they wrought, and the wickedness of their mysteries, and the mingling of their pollution.

2 But even Israel was then polluted by sins in the days of the judges, though they saw many sip which were from Him who made them.

## Chapter 61

1 And the bright sixth waters which thou didst see, this is the time in which David and Solomon were born.

2 And there was at that time the building of Zion, and the dedication of the sanctuary, and the shedding of much blood of the nations that sinned then, and many offerings which were offered then in the dedication of the sanctuary.

3 And peace and tranquillity existed at that time, and wisdom was heard in the assembly:

4 and the riches of understanding were magnified in the congregations,

5 and the holy festivals were fulfilled in blessedness and in much joy.

6 And the judgement of the rulers was then seen to be without guile, and the righteousness of the precepts of the Mighty One was accomplished with truth.

7 And the land which was then beloved by YHWH, And because its inhabitants sinned not, it was glorified beyond all lands, and the city Zion ruled then over all lands and regions.

8 These are the bright waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 62

1 And the black seventh waters which thou hast seen, this is the perversion brought about by the counsel of Jeroboam, who took counsel to make two calves of gold:

2 and all the iniquities which kings who were after him iniquitously wrought.

3 And the curse of Jezebel and the worship of idols which Israel practised at that time.

4 And the withholding of rain, and the famines which occurred until women eat the fruit of their wombs.

5 And the time of their captivity which came upon the nine tribes and a half, because they were in many sins.

6 And Salmanasar king of Assyria came and led them away captive.

7 But regarding the Gentiles it were tedious to tell how they always wrought impiety and wickedness, and never wrought righteousness.

8 These are the black seventh waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 63

1 And the bright eighth waters which thou hast seen, this is the rectitude and uprightness of Hezekiah king of Judah and the grace of God which came upon him.

2 For when Sennacherib was stirred up in order that he might perish, and his wrath troubled him in order that he might thereby perish, for the multitude also of the nations which were with him.

3 When, moreover, Hezekiah the king heard those things which the king of Assyria was devising, to come and seize him and destroy his people, the two and a half tribes which remained: nay, more he wished to overthrow Zion also: then Hezekiah trusted in his works, and had hope in his righteousness, and spake with the Mighty One and said:

4 Behold, for lo! Sennacherib is prepared to destroy us, and he will be boastful and uplifted when he has destroyed Zion.

5 And the Mighty One heard him, for Hezekiah was wise, and He had respect unto his prayer, because he was righteous.

6 And thereupon the Mighty One commanded Ramiel His angel who speaks with thee.

7 And I went forth and destroyed their multitude, the number of whose chiefs only was a hundred and eighty-five thousand, and each one of them had an equal number at his command.

8 And at that time I burned their bodies within, but their raiment and arms I preserved outwardly, in order that the still more wonderful deeds of the Mighty One might appear, and that thereby His name might 9 be spoken of throughout the whole earth. And Zion was saved and Jerusalem delivered: Israel also 10 was freed from tribulation. And all those who were in the holy land rejoiced, and the name of the 11 Mighty One was glorified so that it was spoken of. These are the bright waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 64

1 And the black ninth waters which thou hast seen, this is all the wickedness which was in the days of Manasseh the son of Hezekiah.

2 For he wrought much impiety, and he slew the righteous, and he wrested judgement. and he shed the blood of the innocent, and wedded women he violently polluted, and he overturned the altars, and destroyed their offerings, and drove forth their priests lest they should minister in the sanctuary.

3 And he made an image with five faces: four of them looked to the four winds, and the fifth on the summit of the image as an adversary of the zeal of the Mighty One.

4 And then wrath went forth from the presence of the Mighty One to the intent that Zion should be rooted out, as also it befell in your days.

5 But also against the two tribes and a half went forth a decree that they should also be led away captive, as thou hast now seen.

6 And to such a degree did the impiety of Manasseh increase, that it removed the praise of the Most High from the sanctuary.

7 On this account Manasseh was at that time named the impious, and finally his abode was in the fire.

8 For though his prayer was heard with the Most High, finally, when he was cast into the brazen horse and the brazen horse was melted, it served as a sign unto him for the hour.

9 For he had not lived perfectly, for he was not worthy but that thenceforward he might know by whom finally he should be tormented.

10 For he who is able to benefit is also able to torment.

## Chapter 65

1 Thus, moreover, did Manasseh act impiously, and thought that in his time the Mighty One would not inquire into these things.

2 These are the black ninth waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 66

1 And the bright tenth waters which thou hast seen: this is the purity of the generations of Josiah king of Judah, who was the only one at the time who submitted himself to the Mighty One with all his heart and with all his soul.

2 And he cleansed the land from idols, and hallowed all the vessels which had been polluted, and restored the offerings to the altar, and raised the horn of the holy, and exalted the righteous, and honoured all that were wise in understanding, and brought back the priests to their ministry, and

destroyed and removed the magicians and enchanters and necromancers from the land.

3 And not only did he slay the impious that were living, but they also took from the sepulchres the bones of the dead and burned them with fire.

4 And the festivals and the sabbaths he established in their sanctity, and their polluted ones he burnt in the fire, and the lying prophets which deceived the people, these also he burnt in the fire, and the people who listened to them when they were living, he cast them into the brook Cedron, and heaped stones upon them.

5 And he was zealous with zeal for the Mighty One with all his soul, and he alone was firm in the law at that time, so that he left none that was uncircumcised, or that wrought impiety in all the land, all the days of his life.

6 Therefore he shall receive an eternal reward, and he shall be glorified with the Mighty One beyond many at a later time.

7 For on his account and on account of those who are like him were the honourable glories, of which thou wast told before, created and prepared.

8 These are the bright waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 67

1 And the black eleventh waters which thou hast seen: this is the calamity which is now befalling Zion.

2 Dost thou think that there is no anguish to the angels in the presence of the Mighty One, that Zion was so delivered up, and that lo! The Gentiles boast in their hearts, and assemble before their idols and say, She is trodden down who oft times trod down, and she has been reduced to servitude who reduced others?

3 Dost thou think that in these things the Most High rejoices, or that His name is glorified?

4 But how will it serve towards His righteous judgement?

5 Yet after these things shall the dispersed among the Gentiles be taken hold of by tribulation, and in shame shall they dwell in every place.

6 Because so far as Zion is delivered up And Jerusalem laid waste, shall idols prosper in the cities of the Gentiles, and the vapour of the smoke of the incense of the righteousness which is by the law is extinguished in Zion, and in the region of Zion in every place lo! There is the smoke of impiety.

7 But the king of Babylon will arise who has now destroyed Zion, and he will boast over the people, and he will speak great things in his heart in the presence of the Most High.

8 But he also shall fall at last. These are the black waters.

## Chapter 68

1 And the bright twelfth waters which thou hast seen: this is the word.

2 For after these things a time will come when thy people shall fall into distress, so that they shall all run the risk of perishing together.

3 Nevertheless, they will be saved, and their enemies will fall in their presence.

4 And they will have in due time much joy.

5 And at that time after a little interval Zion will again be builded, and its offerings will again be restored, and the priests will return to their ministry, and also the Gentiles will come to glorify it.

6 Nevertheless, not fully as in the beginning.

7 But it will come to pass after these things that there will be the fall of many nations.

8 These are the bright waters which thou hast seen.

## Chapter 69

1 For the last waters which thou hast seen which were darker than all that were before them, those which were after the twelfth number, which were collected together, belong to the whole world.

2 For the Most High made division from the beginning, because He alone knows what will befall.

3 For as to the enormities and the impieties which should be wrought before Him, He foresaw six kinds of them.

4 And of the good works of the righteous which should be accomplished before Him, He foresaw six kinds of them, beyond those which He should work at the consummation of the age.

5 On his account there were not black waters with black, nor bright with bright; for it is the consummation.

## Chapter 70

1 Hear therefore the interpretation of the last black waters which are to come after the black: this is the word.

2 Behold! The days come, and it shall be when the time of the age has ripened, and the harvest of its evil and good seeds has come, that the Mighty One will bring upon the earth and its inhabitants and upon its rulers Perturbation of spirit and stupor of heart.

3 And they shall hate one another, and provoke one another to fight, and the mean shall rule over the honourable, and those of low degree shall be

extolled above the famous.

4 And the many shall be delivered into the hands of the few, and those who were nothing shall rule over the strong, and the poor shall have abundance beyond the rich, and the impious shall exalt themselves above the heroic.

5 And the wise shall be silent, and the foolish shall speak, neither shall the thought of men be then confirmed, nor the counsel of the mighty, nor shall the hope of those who hope be confirmed.

6 And when those things which were predicted have come to pass, then shall confusion fall upon all men, and some of them shall fall in battle, and some of them shall perish in anguish, and some of them shall be destroyed by their own.

7 Then the Most High will reveal those peoples whom He has prepared before, and they shall come and make war with the leaders that shall then be left.

8 And it shall come to pass that whosoever gets safe out of the war shall die in the earthquake, and whosoever gets safe out of the earthquake shall be burned by the fire, and whosoever gets safe out of the fire shall be destroyed by famine.

9 And it shall come to pass that whosoever of the victors and the vanquished gets safe out of and escapes all these things aforesaid will be delivered into the hands of My servant Messiah.

10 For all the earth shall devour its inhabitants.

## Chapter 71

1 And the holy land shall have mercy on its own, and it shall protect its inhabitants at that time.

2 This is the vision which thou hast seen, and this is the interpretation.

3 For I have come to tell thee these things, because thy prayer has been heard with the Most High.

## Chapter 72

1 Hear now also regarding the bright lightning which is to come at the consummation after these black waters: this is the word.

2 After the signs have come, of which thou wast told before, when the nations become turbulent, and the time of My Messiah is come, he shall both summon all the nations, and some of them he shall spare, and some of them he shall slay.

3 These things therefore shall come upon the nations which are to be spared by Him.

4 Every nation, which knows not Israel and has not trodden down the seed of Jacob, shall indeed be spared.  
5 And this because some out of every nation shall be subjected to thy people.  
6 But all those who have ruled over you, or have known you, shall be given up to the sword.

### Chapter 73

1 And it shall come to pass, when He has brought low everything that is in the world, and has sat down in peace for the age on the throne of His kingdom, that joy shall then be revealed, and rest shall appear.  
2 And then healing shall descend in dew, and disease shall withdraw, and anxiety and anguish and lamentation pass from amongst men, and gladness proceed through the whole earth.  
3 And no one shall again die untimely, nor shall any adversity suddenly befall.  
4 And judgements, and revilings, and contentions, and revenges, and blood, and passions, and envy, and hatred, and whatsoever things are like these shall go into condemnation when they are removed.  
5 For it is these very things which have filled this world with evils, and on account of these the life of man has been greatly troubled.  
6 And wild beasts shall come from the forest and minister unto men, and asps and dragons shall come forth from their holes to submit themselves to a little child.  
7 And women shall no longer then have pain when they bear, nor shall they suffer torment when they yield the fruit of the womb.

### Chapter 74

1 And it shall come to pass in those days that the reapers shall not grow weary, nor those that build be toil worn; for the works shall of themselves speedily advance Together with those who do them in much tranquillity.  
2 For that time is the consummation of that which is corruptible, and the beginning of that which is not corruptible.  
3 Therefore those things which were predicted shall belong to it: therefore it is far away from evils, and near to those things which die not.  
4 This is the bright lightning which came after the last dark waters.

### Chapter 75

1 And I answered and said: Who can understand, O YHWH, Thy

goodness? For it is incomprehensible.

2 Or who can search into thy compassions, which are infinite?

3 Or who can comprehend Thy intelligence?

4 Or who is able to recount the thoughts of Thy mind?

5 Or who of those who are born can hope to come to those things, unless he is one to whom Thou art merciful and gracious?

6 Because, if assuredly Thou didst not have compassion on man, those who are under Thy right hand, they could not come to those things, But those who are in the numbers named can be called.

7 But if, indeed, we who exist know wherefore we have come, and submit ourselves to Him who brought us out of Egypt, we shall come again and remember those things which have passed, and shall rejoice regarding that which has been.

8 But if now we know not wherefore we have come, and recognize not the principate of Him who brought us up out of Egypt, we shall come again and seek after those things which have been now, and be grieved with pain because of those things which have befallen.

## Chapter 76

1 And He answered and said unto me: Inasmuch as the revelation of this vision has been interpreted to thee as thou besoughtest, hear the word of the Most High that thou mayst know what is to befall thee after these things.

2 For thou shalt surely depart from this earth, nevertheless not unto death, but thou shalt be preserved unto the consummation of the times.

3 Go up therefore to the top of that mountain, and there shall pass before thee all the regions of that land, and the figure of the inhabited world, and the tops of the mountains, and the depths of the valleys, and the depths of the seas, and the number of the rivers, that thou mayst see what thou art leaving, and whither thou art going.

4 Now this shall befall after forty days. Go now therefore during these days and instruct the people so far as thou art able, that they may learn so as not to die at the last time, but may learn in order that they may live at the last times.

## Chapter 77

1 And I, Baruch, went thence and came to the people, and assembled them together from the greatest to the least, and said unto them:

2 Hear, ye children of Israel, behold how many ye are who remain of the twelve tribes of Israel.



3 For to you and to your fathers YHWH gave a law more excellent than to all peoples.

4 And because your brethren transgressed the commandments of the Most High, He brought vengeance upon you and upon them, and He spared not the former, and the latter also He gave into captivity: and He left not a residue of them,

5 but behold! Ye are here with me.

6 If, therefore, ye direct your ways aright, ye also shall not depart as your brethren departed, but they shall come to you.

7 For He is merciful whom ye worship, and He is gracious in whom ye hope, and He is true, so that He shall do good and not evil.

8 Have ye not seen here what has befallen Zion?

9 Or do ye perchance think that the place had sinned, and that on this account it was overthrown? Or that the land had wrought foolishness, and that therefore it was delivered up?

10 And know ye not that on account of you who did sin, that which sinned not was overthrown, and, on account of those who wrought wickedly, that which wrought not foolishness was delivered up to its enemies?

11 And the whole people answered and said unto me: So far as we can recall the good things which the Mighty One has done unto us, we do recall them; and those things which we do not remember He in His mercy knows.

12 Nevertheless, do this for us thy people: write also to our brethren in Babylon an epistle of doctrine and a scroll of hope, that thou mayst confirm them also before thou dost depart from us.

13 For the shepherds of Israel have perished, and the lamps which gave light are extinguished, and the fountains have withheld their stream whence we used to drink.

14 And we are left in the darkness, and amid the trees of the forest, and the thirst of the wilderness.

15 And I answered and said unto them: Shepherds and lamps and fountains come from the law: and though we depart, yet the law abideth.

16 If therefore ye have respect to the law, and are intent upon wisdom, a lamp will not be wanting, and a shepherd will not fail, and a fountain will not dry up.

17 Nevertheless, as ye said unto me, I will write also unto your brethren in Babylon, and I will send by means of men, and I will write in like manner to the nine tribes and a half, and send by means of a bird.

18 And it came to pass on the one and twentieth day in the eighth month that I, Baruch, came and sat down under the oak under the shadow of the branches, and no man was with me, but I was alone.

19 And I wrote these two epistles: one I sent by an eagle to the nine and a

half tribes; and the other I sent to those that were at Babylon by means of three men.

20 And I called the eagle and spake these words unto it:

21 The Most High hath made thee that thou shouldst be higher than all birds.

22 And now go and tarry not in any place, nor enter a nest, nor settle upon any tree, till thou hast passed over the breadth of the many waters of the river Euphrates, and hast gone to the people that dwell there, and cast down to them this epistle.

23 Remember, moreover, that, at the time of the deluge, Noah received from a dove the fruit of the olive, when he sent it forth from the ark.

24 Yea, also the ravens ministered to Elijah, bearing him food, as they had been commanded.

25 Solomon also, in the time of his kingdom, whithersoever he wished to send or seek for anything, commanded a bird to go thither, and it obeyed him as he commanded it.

26 And now let it not weary thee, and turn not to the right hand nor the left, but fly and go by a direct way, that thou mayst preserve the command of the Mighty One, according as I said unto thee.

# The Letter of Baruch

## Chapter 1

1 These are the words of that epistle which Baruch the son of Neriah sent to the nine and a half tribes, which were across the river Euphrates, in which these things were written.

2 Thus saith Baruch the son of Neriah to the brethren carried into captivity:

3 Mercy and peace. I bear in mind, my brethren, the love of Him who created us, who loved us from of old, and never hated us, but above all educated us.

4 And truly I know that behold all we the twelve tribes are bound by one bond, inasmuch as we are born from one father.

5 Wherefore I have been the more careful to leave you the words of this epistle before I die, that ye may be comforted regarding the evils which have come upon you, and that ye may be grieved also regarding the evil that has befallen your brethren; and again, also, that ye may justify His judgement which He has decreed against you that ye should be carried away captives for what ye have suffered is disproportioned to what ye have done in order that, at the last times, ye may be found worthy of your fathers.

6 Therefore, if ye consider that ye have now suffered those things for your good, that ye may not finally be condemned and tormented, then ye will receive eternal hope; if above all ye destroy from your heart vain error, on account of which ye departed, hence.

7 For if ye so do these things, He will continually remember you, He who always promised on our behalf to those who were more excellent than we, that He will never forget or forsake us, but with much mercy will gather together again those who were dispersed.

## Chapter 2

1 Now, my brethren, learn first what befell Zion: how that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against us.

2 For we have sinned against Him who made us, and we have not kept the commandments which he commanded us, yet he hath not chastened us as we deserved.

3 For what befell you we also suffer in a pre-eminent degree, for it befell us also.

## Chapter 3

1 And now, my brethren, I make known unto you that when the enemy had surrounded the city, the angels of the Most High were sent, and they overthrew the fortifications of the strong wall, and they destroyed the firm iron corners, which could not be rooted out.

2 Nevertheless, they hid all the vessels of the sanctuary, lest the enemy should get possession of them.

3 And when they had done these things, they delivered thereupon to the enemy the overthrown wall, and the plundered house, and the burnt temple, and the people who were overcome because they were delivered up, lest the enemy should boast and say: Thus by force have we been able to lay waste even the house of the Most High in war.

4 Your brethren also have they bound and led away to Babylon, and have caused them to dwell there.

5 But we have been left here, being very few.

6 This is the tribulation about which I wrote to you.

7 For assuredly I know that the consolation of the inhabitants of Zion consoleth you: so far as ye knew that it was prospered your consolation was greater than the tribulation which ye endured in having to depart from it.

## Chapter 4

1 But regarding consolation, hear ye the word.

2 For I was mourning regarding Zion, and I prayed for mercy from the Most High, and I said:

3 How long will these things endure for us? And will these evils come upon us always?

4 And the Mighty One did according to the multitude of His mercies, and the Most High according to the greatness of His compassion, and He revealed unto me the word, that I might receive consolation, and He showed me visions that I should not again endure anguish, and He made known to me the mystery of the times. And the advent of the hours he showed me.

## Chapter 5

1 Therefore, my brethren, I have written to you, that ye may comfort yourselves regarding the multitude of your tribulations.

2 For know ye that our Maker will assuredly avenge us on all our enemies,

according to all that they have done to us, also that the consummation which the Most High will make is very nigh, and His mercy that is coming, and the consummation of His judgement is by no means far off. 3 For Lo! We see now the multitude of the prosperity of the Gentiles, though they act impiously, but they shall be like a vapour:

4 and we behold the multitude of their power, though they do wickedly, but they shall be made like unto a drop:

5 and we see the firmness of their might. Though they resist the Mighty One every hour, but they shall be accounted as spittle.

6 And we consider the glory of their greatness, though they do not keep the statutes of the Most High, but as smoke shall they pass away.

7 And we meditate on the beauty of theirs gracefulness, though they have to do with pollutions, but as grass that withers shall they fade away.

8 And we consider the strength of their cruelty, though they remember not the end thereof, but as a wave that passes shall they be broken.

9 And we remark the boastfulness of their might, though they deny the beneficence of God, who gave it to them, but they shall pass away as a passing cloud.

## Chapter 6

1 For the Most High will assuredly hasten His times, and He will assuredly bring on His hours.

2 And He will assuredly judge those who are in His world, and will visit in truth all things by means of all their hidden works.

3 And He will assuredly examine the secret thoughts, and that which is laid up in the secret chambers of all the members of man, and will make them manifest in the presence of all with reproof.

4 Let none therefore of these present things ascend into your hearts, but above all let us be expectant, because that which is promised to us shall come.

5 And let us not now look unto the delights of the Gentiles in the present, but let us remember what has been promised to us in the end.

6 For the ends of the times and of the seasons and whatsoever is with them shall assuredly pass by together.

7 The consummation, moreover, of the age shall then show the great might of its ruler, when all things come to judgement.

8 Do ye therefore prepare your hearts for that which before ye believed, lest ye come to be in bondage in both worlds, so that ye be led away captive here and be tormented there.

9 For that which exists now or which has passed away, or which is to come, in all these things, neither is the evil fully evil, nor again the good fully

good.

10 For all healthinesses of this time are turning into diseases,

11 and all might of this time is turning into weakness, and all the force of this time is turning into impotence,

12 and every energy of youth is turning into old age and consummation.

And every beauty of gracefulness of this time is turning faded and hateful,

13 and every proud dominion of the present is turning into humiliation and shame,

14 and every praise of the glory of this time is turning into the shame of silence, and every vain splendour and insolence of this time is turning into voiceless ruin.

15 And every delight and joy of this time is turning to worms and corruption,

16 and every clamour of the pride of this time is turning into dust and stillness.

17 And every possession of riches of this time is being turned into Sheol alone,

18 and all the rapine of passion of this time is turning into involuntary death, and every passion of the lusts of this time is turning into a judgement of torment.

19 And every artifice and craftiness of this time is turning into a proof of the truth,

20 and every sweetness of unguents of this time is turning into judgement and condemnation,

21 and every love of lying is turning to contumely through truth.

22 Since therefore all these things are done now, does anyone think that they will not be avenged; but the consummation of all things will come to the truth.

## Chapter 7

1 Behold! I have therefore made known unto you these things whilst I live: for I have said it that ye should learn the things that are excellent; for the Mighty One hath commanded me to instruct you: and I will set before you some of the commandments of His judgement before I die.

2 Remember that formerly Moses assuredly called heaven and earth to witness against you and said:

3 If ye transgress the law ye shall be dispersed, but if ye keep it ye shall be kept. And other things also he used to say unto you when ye the twelve tribes were together in the desert.

4 And after his death ye cast them away from you: on this account there came upon you what had been predicted.

5 And now Moses used to tell you before they befell you, and lo! They have befallen you: for ye have forsaken the law.

6 Lo! I also say unto you after ye have suffered, that if ye obey those things which have been said unto you, ye will receive from the Mighty One whatever has been laid up and reserved for you.

7 Moreover, let this epistle be for a testimony between me and you, that ye may remember the commandments of the Mighty One, and that also there may be to me a defence in the presence of Him who sent me.

8 And remember ye the law and Zion, and the holy land and your brethren, and the covenant of your fathers, and forget not the festivals and the sabbaths.

9 And deliver ye this epistle and the traditions of the law to your sons after you, as also your fathers delivered them to you.

10 And at all times make request perseveringly and pray diligently with your whole heart that the Mighty One may be reconciled to you, and that He may not reckon the multitude of your sins, but remember the rectitude of your fathers.

11 For if He judge us not according to the multitude of His mercies, woe unto all us who are born.

## Chapter 8

1 Know ye, moreover, that in former times and in the generations of old our fathers had helpers, righteous men and holy prophets:

2 nay more, we were in our own land and they helped us when we sinned, and they interceded for us with Him who made us, because they trusted in their works, and the Mighty One heard their prayer and forgave us.

3 But now the righteous have been gathered, and the prophets have fallen asleep, and we also have gone forth from the land, and Zion has been taken from us, and we have nothing now save the Mighty One and His law.

4 If therefore we direct and dispose our hearts, we shall receive everything that we lost, and much better things than we lost by many times.

5 For what we have lost was subject to corruption, and what we shall receive shall not be corruptible.

6 Moreover, also, I have written thus to our brethren to Babylon, that to them also I may attest these very things.

7 And let all those things aforesaid be always before your eyes, because we are still in the spirit and the power of our liberty.

8 Again, moreover, the Most High also is long-suffering towards us here, and He hath shown to us that which is to be, and hath not concealed from us what will befall in the end.

9 Before therefore judgement exact its own, and truth that which is its due,

let us prepare our soul that we may possess, and not be taken possession of, and that we may hope and not be put to shame, and that we may rest with our fathers, and not be tormented with our enemies.

10 For the youth of the world is past, and the strength of the creation already exhausted, and the advent of the times is very short, yea, they have passed by; and the pitcher is near to the cistern, and the ship to the port, and the course of the journey to the city, and life to its consummation.

11 And again prepare your souls, so that when ye sail and ascend from the ship ye may have rest and not be condemned when ye depart.

12 For lo! When the Most High will bring to pass all these things, there shall not there be again a place of repentance, nor a limit to the times, nor a duration for the hours, nor a change of ways, nor place for prayer, nor sending of petitions, nor receiving of knowledge, nor giving of love, nor place of repentance for the soul, nor supplication for offences, nor intercession of the fathers, nor prayer of the prophets, nor help of the righteous.

13 There there is the sentence of corruption, the way of fire, and the path which bringeth to Gehenna.

14 On this account there is one law by one, one age and an end for all who are in it.

15 Then He will preserve those whom He can forgive, and at the same time destroy those who are polluted with sins.

## Chapter 9

1 When therefore ye receive this my epistle, read it in your congregations with care.

2 And meditate thereon, above all on the days of your fasts.

3 And bear me in mind by means of this epistle, as I also bear you in mind in it, and always. Fare ye well.

## Chapter 10

1 And it came to pass when I had ended all the words of this epistle, and had written it sedulously to its close, that I folded it, and sealed it carefully, and bound it to the neck of the eagle, and dismissed and sent it.



# The Apocalypse of Ezra

(4 *Ezra* / 2<sup>nd</sup> *Esdras* 3-14)

## Chapter 1

1 In the thirtieth year after the ruin of the city I was in Babylon, and lay troubled upon my bed, and my thoughts came up over my heart:

2 For I saw the desolation of Sion, and the wealth of them that dwelt at Babylon.

3 And my spirit was sore moved, so that I began to speak words full of fear to the most High, and said,

4 O YHWH, who bearest rule, thou spakest at the beginning, when thou didst plant the earth, and that thyself alone, and commandedst the people,  
5 And gavest a body unto Adam without soul, which was the workmanship of thine hands, and didst breathe into him the breath of life, and he was made living before thee.

6 And thou leadest him into paradise, which thy right hand had planted, before ever the earth came forward.

7 And unto him thou gavest commandment to love thy way: which he transgressed, and immediately thou appointedst death in him and in his generations, of whom came nations, tribes, people, and kindreds, out of number.

8 And every people walked after their own will, and did wonderful things before thee, and despised thy commandments.

9 And again in process of time thou broughtest the flood upon those that dwelt in the world, and destroyedst them.

10 And it came to pass in every of them, that as death was to Adam, so was the flood to these.

11 Nevertheless one of them thou leftest, namely, Noah with his household, of whom came all righteous men.

12 And it happened, that when they that dwelt upon the earth began to multiply, and had gotten them many children, and were a great people, they began again to be more ungodly than the first.

13 Now when they lived so wickedly before thee, thou didst choose thee a man from among them, whose name was Abraham.

14 Him thou lovedst, and unto him only thou shewedst thy will:

15 And madest an everlasting covenant with him, promising him that thou wouldest never forsake his seed.

16 And unto him thou gavest Isaac, and unto Isaac also thou gavest Jacob and Esau. As for Jacob, thou didst choose him to thee, and put by Esau:

and so Jacob became a great multitude.

17 And it came to pass, that when thou leadest his seed out of Egypt, thou broughtest them up to the mount Sinai.

18 And bowing the heavens, thou didst set fast the earth, movedst the whole world, and madest the depths to tremble, and troubledst the men of that age.

19 And thy glory went through four gates, of fire, and of earthquake, and of wind, and of cold; that thou mightest give the law unto the seed of Jacob, and diligence unto the generation of Israel.

20 And yet tookest thou not away from them a wicked heart, that thy law might bring forth fruit in them.

21 For the first Adam bearing a wicked heart transgressed, and was overcome; and so be all they that are born of him.

22 Thus infirmity was made permanent; and the law also in the heart of the people with the malignity of the root; so that the good departed away, and the evil abode still.

23 So the times passed away, and the years were brought to an end: then didst thou raise thee up a servant, called David:

24 Whom thou commandedst to build a city unto thy name, and to offer incense and oblations unto thee therein.

25 When this was done many years, then they that inhabited the city forsook thee,

26 And in all things did even as Adam and all his generations had done: for they also had a wicked heart:

27 And so thou gavest thy city over into the hands of thine enemies.

28 Are their deeds then any better that inhabit Babylon, that they should therefore have the dominion over Sion?

29 For when I came thither, and had seen impieties without number, then my soul saw many evildoers in this thirtieth year, so that my heart failed me.

30 For I have seen how thou sufferest them sinning, and hast spared wicked doers: and hast destroyed thy people, and hast preserved thine enemies, and hast not signified it.

31 I do not remember how this way may be left: Are they then of Babylon better than they of Sion?

32 Or is there any other people that knoweth thee beside Israel? or what generation hath so believed thy covenants as Jacob?

33 And yet their reward appeareth not, and their labour hath no fruit: for I have gone here and there through the heathen, and I see that they flow in wealth, and think not upon thy commandments.

34 Weigh thou therefore our wickedness now in the balance, and their's also that dwell the world; and so shall thy name no where be found but in

Israel.

35 Or when was it that they which dwell upon the earth have not sinned in thy sight? or what people have so kept thy commandments?

36 Thou shalt find that Israel by name hath kept thy precepts; but not the heathen.

## Chapter 2

1 And the angel that was sent unto me, whose name was Uriel, gave me an answer,

2 And said, Thy heart hath gone to far in this world, and thinkest thou to comprehend the way of the most High?

3 Then said I, Yea, my lord. And he answered me, and said, I am sent to shew thee three ways, and to set forth three similitudes before thee:

4 Whereof if thou canst declare me one, I will shew thee also the way that thou desirest to see, and I shall shew thee from whence the wicked heart cometh.

5 And I said, Tell on, my lord. Then said he unto me, Go thy way, weigh me the weight of the fire, or measure me the blast of the wind, or call me again the day that is past.

6 Then answered I and said, What man is able to do that, that thou shouldest ask such things of me?

7 And he said unto me, If I should ask thee how great dwellings are in the midst of the sea, or how many springs are in the beginning of the deep, or how many springs are above the firmament, or which are the outgoings of paradise:

8 Peradventure thou wouldest say unto me, I never went down into the deep, nor as yet into hell, neither did I ever climb up into heaven.

9 Nevertheless now have I asked thee but only of the fire and wind, and of the day wherethrough thou hast passed, and of things from which thou canst not be separated, and yet canst thou give me no answer of them.

10 He said moreover unto me, Thine own things, and such as are grown up with thee, canst thou not know;

11 How should thy vessel then be able to comprehend the way of the Highest, and, the world being now outwardly corrupted to understand the corruption that is evident in my sight?

12 Then said I unto him, It were better that we were not at all, than that we should live still in wickedness, and to suffer, and not to know wherefore.

13 He answered me, and said, I went into a forest into a plain, and the trees took counsel,

14 And said, Come, let us go and make war against the sea that it may depart away before us, and that we may make us more woods.

15 The floods of the sea also in like manner took counsel, and said, Come, let us go up and subdue the woods of the plain, that there also we may make us another country.

16 The thought of the wood was in vain, for the fire came and consumed it.

17 The thought of the floods of the sea came likewise to nought, for the sand stood up and stopped them.

18 If thou wert judge now betwixt these two, whom wouldest thou begin to justify? or whom wouldest thou condemn?

19 I answered and said, Verily it is a foolish thought that they both have devised, for the ground is given unto the wood, and the sea also hath his place to bear his floods.

20 Then answered he me, and said, Thou hast given a right judgment, but why judgest thou not thyself also?

21 For like as the ground is given unto the wood, and the sea to his floods: even so they that dwell upon the earth may understand nothing but that which is upon the earth: and he that dwelleth above the heavens may only understand the things that are above the height of the heavens.

22 Then answered I and said, I beseech thee, O Lord, let me have understanding:

23 For it was not my mind to be curious of the high things, but of such as pass by us daily, namely, wherefore Israel is given up as a reproach to the heathen, and for what cause the people whom thou hast loved is given over unto ungodly nations, and why the law of our forefathers is brought to nought, and the written covenants come to none effect,

24 And we pass away out of the world as grasshoppers, and our life is astonishment and fear, and we are not worthy to obtain mercy.

25 What will he then do unto his name whereby we are called? of these things have I asked.

26 Then answered he me, and said, The more thou searchest, the more thou shalt marvel; for the world hasteth fast to pass away,

27 And cannot comprehend the things that are promised to the righteous in time to come: for this world is full of unrighteousness and infirmities.

28 But as concerning the things whereof thou askest me, I will tell thee; for the evil is sown, but the destruction thereof is not yet come.

29 If therefore that which is sown be not turned upside down, and if the place where the evil is sown pass not away, then cannot it come that is sown with good.

30 For the grain of evil seed hath been sown in the heart of Adam from the beginning, and how much ungodliness hath it brought up unto this time? and how much shall it yet bring forth until the time of threshing come?

31 Ponder now by thyself, how great fruit of wickedness the grain of evil seed hath brought forth.

32 And when the ears shall be cut down, which are without number, how great a floor shall they fill?

33 Then I answered and said, How, and when shall these things come to pass? wherefore are our years few and evil?

34 And he answered me, saying, Do not thou hasten above the most Highest: for thy haste is in vain to be above him, for thou hast much exceeded.

35 Did not the souls also of the righteous ask question of these things in their chambers, saying, How long shall I hope on this fashion? when cometh the fruit of the floor of our reward?

36 And unto these things Uriel the archangel gave them answer, and said, Even when the number of seeds is filled in you: for he hath weighed the world in the balance.

37 By measure hath he measured the times; and by number hath he numbered the times; and he doth not move nor stir them, until the said measure be fulfilled.

38 Then answered I and said, O Lord who bearest rule, even we all are full of impiety.

39 And for our sakes peradventure it is that the floors of the righteous are not filled, because of the sins of them that dwell upon the earth.

40 So he answered me, and said, Go thy way to a woman with child, and ask of her when she hath fulfilled her nine months, if her womb may keep the birth any longer within her.

41 Then said I, No, Lord, that can she not. And he said unto me, In the grave the chambers of souls are like the womb of a woman:

42 For like as a woman that travaileth maketh haste to escape the necessity of the travail: even so do these places haste to deliver those things that are committed unto them.

43 From the beginning, look, what thou desirest to see, it shall be shewed thee.

44 Then answered I and said, If I have found favour in thy sight, and if it be possible, and if I be meet therefore,

45 Shew me then whether there be more to come than is past, or more past than is to come.

46 What is past I know, but what is for to come I know not.

47 And he said unto me, Stand up upon the right side, and I shall expound the similitude unto thee.

48 So I stood, and saw, and, behold, an hot burning oven passed by before me: and it happened that when the flame was gone by I looked, and, behold, the smoke remained still.

49 After this there passed by before me a watery cloud, and sent down much rain with a storm; and when the stormy rain was past, the drops remained still.

50 Then said he unto me, Consider with thyself; as the rain is more than the drops, and as the fire is greater than the smoke; but the drops and the smoke remain behind: so the quantity which is past did more exceed.

51 Then I prayed, and said, May I live, thinkest thou, until that time? or what shall happen in those days?

52 He answered me, and said, As for the tokens whereof thou askest me, I may tell thee of them in part: but as touching thy life, I am not sent to shew thee; for I do not know it.

### Chapter 3

1 Nevertheless as coming the tokens, behold, the days shall come, that they which dwell upon earth shall be taken in a great number, and the way of truth shall be hidden, and the land shall be barren of faith.

2 But iniquity shall be increased above that which now thou seest, or that thou hast heard long ago.

3 And the land, that thou seest now to have root, shalt thou see wasted suddenly.

4 But if the most High grant thee to live, thou shalt see after the third trumpet that the sun shall suddenly shine again in the night, and the moon thrice in the day:

5 And blood shall drop out of wood, and the stone shall give his voice, and the people shall be troubled:

6 And even he shall rule, whom they look not for that dwell upon the earth, and the fowls shall take their flight away together:

7 And the Sodomitish sea shall cast out fish, and make a noise in the night, which many have not known: but they shall all hear the voice thereof.

8 There shall be a confusion also in many places, and the fire shall be oft sent out again, and the wild beasts shall change their places, and menstruous women shall bring forth monsters:

9 And salt waters shall be found in the sweet, and all friends shall destroy one another; then shall wit hide itself, and understanding withdraw itself into his secret chamber,

10 And shall be sought of many, and yet not be found: then shall unrighteousness and incontineny be multiplied upon earth.

11 One land also shall ask another, and say, Is righteousness that maketh a man righteous gone through thee? And it shall say, No.

12 At the same time shall men hope, but nothing obtain: they shall labour, but their ways shall not prosper.

13 To shew thee such tokens I have leave; and if thou wilt pray again, and weep as now, and fast even days, thou shalt hear yet greater things.

14 Then I awaked, and an extreme fearfulness went through all my body, and my mind was troubled, so that it fainted.

15 So the angel that was come to talk with me held me, comforted me, and set me up upon my feet.

16 And in the second night it came to pass, that Salathiel the captain of the people came unto me, saying, Where hast thou been? and why is thy countenance so heavy?

17 Knowest thou not that Israel is committed unto thee in the land of their captivity?

18 Up then, and eat bread, and forsake us not, as the shepherd that leaveth his flock in the hands of cruel wolves.

19 Then said I unto him, Go thy ways from me, and come not nigh me. And he heard what I said, and went from me.

20 And so I fasted seven days, mourning and weeping, like as Uriel the angel commanded me.

21 And after seven days so it was, that the thoughts of my heart were very grievous unto me again,

22 And my soul recovered the spirit of understanding, and I began to talk with the most High again,

23 And said, O YHWH, who bearest rule, of every wood of the earth, and of all the trees thereof, thou hast chosen thee one only vine:

24 And of all lands of the whole world thou hast chosen thee one pit: and of all the flowers thereof one lily:

25 And of all the depths of the sea thou hast filled thee one river: and of all builded cities thou hast hallowed Sion unto thyself:

26 And of all the fowls that are created thou hast named thee one dove: and of all the cattle that are made thou hast provided thee one sheep:

27 And among all the multitudes of people thou hast gotten thee one people: and unto this people, whom thou lovedst, thou gavest a law that is approved of all.

28 And now, O YHWH, why hast thou given this one people over unto many? and upon the one root hast thou prepared others, and why hast thou scattered thy only one people among many?

29 And they which did gainsay thy promises, and believed not thy covenants, have trodden them down.

30 If thou didst so much hate thy people, yet shouldst thou punish them with thine own hands.

31 Now when I had spoken these words, the angel that came to me the night afore was sent unto me,

32 And said unto me, Hear me, and I will instruct thee; hearken to the

thing that I say, and I shall tell thee more.

33 And I said, Speak on, my Lord. Then said he unto me, Thou art sore troubled in mind for Israel's sake: lovest thou that people better than he that made them?

34 And I said, No, Lord: but of very grief have I spoken: for my reins pain me every hour, while I labour to comprehend the way of the most High, and to seek out part of his judgment.

35 And he said unto me, Thou canst not. And I said, Wherefore, YHWH? whereunto was I born then? or why was not my mother's womb then my grave, that I might not have seen the travail of Jacob, and the wearisome toil of the stock of Israel?

36 And he said unto me, Number me the things that are not yet come, gather me together the dross that are scattered abroad, make me the flowers green again that are withered,

37 Open me the places that are closed, and bring me forth the winds that in them are shut up, shew me the image of a voice: and then I will declare to thee the thing that thou labourest to know.

38 And I said, O YHWH who bearest rule, who may know these things, but he that hath not his dwelling with men?

39 As for me, I am unwise: how may I then speak of these things whereof thou askest me?

40 Then said he unto me, Like as thou canst do none of these things that I have spoken of, even so canst thou not find out my judgment, or in the end the love that I have promised unto my people.

41 And I said, Behold, O YHWH, yet art thou nigh unto them that be reserved till the end: and what shall they do that have been before me, or we that be now, or they that shall come after us?

42 And he said unto me, I will liken my judgment unto a ring: like as there is no slackness of the last, even so there is no swiftness of the first.

43 So I answered and said, Coudest thou not make those that have been made, and be now, and that are for to come, at once; that thou mightest shew thy judgment the sooner?

44 Then answered he me, and said, The creature may not haste above the maker; neither may the world hold them at once that shall be created therein.

45 And I said, As thou hast said unto thy servant, that thou, which givest life to all, hast given life at once to the creature that thou hast created, and the creature bare it: even so it might now also bear them that now be present at once.

46 And he said unto me, Ask the womb of a woman, and say unto her, If thou bringest forth children, why dost thou it not together, but one after another? pray her therefore to bring forth ten children at once.



47 And I said, She cannot: but must do it by distance of time.

48 Then said he unto me, Even so have I given the womb of the earth to those that be sown in it in their times.

49 For like as a young child may not bring forth the things that belong to the aged, even so have I disposed the world which I created.

50 And I asked, and said, Seeing thou hast now given me the way, I will proceed to speak before thee: for our mother, of whom thou hast told me that she is young, draweth now nigh unto age.

51 He answered me, and said, Ask a woman that beareth children, and she shall tell thee.

52 Say unto her, Wherefore are unto they whom thou hast now brought forth like those that were before, but less of stature?

53 And she shall answer thee, They that be born in the the strength of youth are of one fashion, and they that are born in the time of age, when the womb faileth, are otherwise.

54 Consider thou therefore also, how that ye are less of stature than those that were before you.

55 And so are they that come after you less than ye, as the creatures which now begin to be old, and have passed over the strength of youth.

56 Then said I, YHWH, I beseech thee, if I have found favour in thy sight, shew thy servant by whom thou visitest thy creature.

#### Chapter 4

1 And he said unto me, In the beginning, when the earth was made, before the borders of the world stood, or ever the winds blew,

2 Before it thundered and lightened, or ever the foundations of paradise were laid,

3 Before the fair flowers were seen, or ever the moveable powers were established, before the innumerable multitude of angels were gathered together,

4 Or ever the heights of the air were lifted up, before the measures of the firmament were named, or ever the chimneys in Sion were hot,

5 And ere the present years were sought out, and or ever the inventions of them that now sin were turned, before they were sealed that have gathered faith for a treasure:

6 Then did I consider these things, and they all were made through me alone, and through none other: by me also they shall be ended, and by none other.

7 Then answered I and said, What shall be the parting asunder of the times? or when shall be the end of the first, and the beginning of it that followeth?

8 And he said unto me, From Abraham unto Isaac, when Jacob and Esau were born of him, Jacob's hand held first the heel of Esau.

9 For Esau is the end of the world, and Jacob is the beginning of it that followeth.

10 The hand of man is betwixt the heel and the hand: other question, Esdras, ask thou not.

11 I answered then and said, O Lord that bearest rule, if I have found favour in thy sight,

12 I beseech thee, shew thy servant the end of thy tokens, whereof thou shewedst me part the last night.

13 So he answered and said unto me, Stand up upon thy feet, and hear a mighty sounding voice.

14 And it shall be as it were a great motion; but the place where thou standest shall not be moved.

15 And therefore when it speaketh be not afraid: for the word is of the end, and the foundation of the earth is understood.

16 And why? because the speech of these things trembleth and is moved: for it knoweth that the end of these things must be changed.

17 And it happened, that when I had heard it I stood up upon my feet, and hearkened, and, behold, there was a voice that spake, and the sound of it was like the sound of many waters.

18 And it said, Behold, the days come, that I will begin to draw nigh, and to visit them that dwell upon the earth,

19 And will begin to make inquisition of them, what they be that have hurt unjustly with their unrighteousness, and when the affliction of Sion shall be fulfilled;

20 And when the world, that shall begin to vanish away, shall be finished, then will I shew these tokens: the books shall be opened before the firmament, and they shall see all together:

21 And the children of a year old shall speak with their voices, the women with child shall bring forth untimely children of three or four months old, and they shall live, and be raised up.

22 And suddenly shall the sown places appear unsown, the full storehouses shall suddenly be found empty:

23 And the trumpet shall give a sound, which when every man heareth, they shall be suddenly afraid.

24 At that time shall friends fight one against another like enemies, and the earth shall stand in fear with those that dwell therein, the springs of the fountains shall stand still, and in three hours they shall not run.

25 Whosoever remaineth from all these that I have told thee shall escape, and see my salvation, and the end of your world.

26 And the men that are received shall see it, who have not tasted death

from their birth: and the heart of the inhabitants shall be changed, and turned into another meaning.

27 For evil shall be put out, and deceit shall be quenched.

28 As for faith, it shall flourish, corruption shall be overcome, and the truth, which hath been so long without fruit, shall be declared.

29 And when he talked with me, behold, I looked by little and little upon him before whom I stood.

30 And these words said he unto me; I am come to shew thee the time of the night to come.

31 If thou wilt pray yet more, and fast seven days again, I shall tell thee greater things by day than I have heard.

32 For thy voice is heard before the most High: for the Mighty hath seen thy righteous dealing, he hath seen also thy chastity, which thou hast had ever since thy youth.

33 And therefore hath he sent me to shew thee all these things, and to say unto thee, Be of good comfort and fear not

34 And hasten not with the times that are past, to think vain things, that thou mayest not hasten from the latter times.

35 And it came to pass after this, that I wept again, and fasted seven days in like manner, that I might fulfil the three weeks which he told me.

36 And in the eighth night was my heart vexed within me again, and I began to speak before the most High.

37 For my spirit was greatly set on fire, and my soul was in distress.

38 And I said, O YHWH, thou spakest from the beginning of the creation, even the first day, and saidst thus; Let heaven and earth be made; and thy word was a perfect work.

39 And then was the spirit, and darkness and silence were on every side; the sound of man's voice was not yet formed.

40 Then commandedst thou a fair light to come forth of thy treasures, that thy work might appear.

41 Upon the second day thou madest the spirit of the firmament, and commandedst it to part asunder, and to make a division betwixt the waters, that the one part might go up, and the other remain beneath.

42 Upon the third day thou didst command that the waters should be gathered in the seventh part of the earth: six parts hast thou dried up, and kept them, to the intent that of these some being planted of God and tilled might serve thee.

43 For as soon as thy word went forth the work was made.

44 For immediately there was great and innumerable fruit, and many and divers pleasures for the taste, and flowers of unchangeable colour, and odours of wonderful smell: and this was done the third day.

45 Upon the fourth day thou commandedst that the sun should shine, and

the moon give her light, and the stars should be in order:

46 And gavest them a charge to do service unto man, that was to be made.

47 Upon the fifth day thou saidst unto the seventh part, where the waters were gathered that it should bring forth living creatures, fowls and fishes: and so it came to pass.

48 For the dumb water and without life brought forth living things at the commandment of God, that all people might praise thy wondrous works.

49 Then didst thou ordain two living creatures, the one thou calledst Enoch, and the other Leviathan;

50 And didst separate the one from the other: for the seventh part, namely, where the water was gathered together, might not hold them both.

51 Unto Enoch thou gavest one part, which was dried up the third day, that he should dwell in the same part, wherein are a thousand hills:

52 But unto Leviathan thou gavest the seventh part, namely, the moist; and hast kept him to be devoured of whom thou wilt, and when.

53 Upon the sixth day thou gavest commandment unto the earth, that before thee it should bring forth beasts, cattle, and creeping things:

54 And after these, Adam also, whom thou madest lord of all thy creatures: of him come we all, and the people also whom thou hast chosen.

55 All this have I spoken before thee, O YHWH, because thou madest the world for our sakes

56 As for the other people, which also come of Adam, thou hast said that they are nothing, but be like unto spittle: and hast likened the abundance of them unto a drop that falleth from a vessel.

57 And now, O YHWH, behold, these heathen, which have ever been reputed as nothing, have begun to be lords over us, and to devour us.

58 But we thy people, whom thou hast called thy firstborn, thy only begotten, and thy fervent lover, are given into their hands.

59 If the world now be made for our sakes, why do we not possess an inheritance with the world? how long shall this endure?

## Chapter 5

1 And when I had made an end of speaking these words, there was sent unto me the angel which had been sent unto me the nights afore:

2 And he said unto me, Up, Esdras, and hear the words that I am come to tell thee.

3 And I said, Speak on, my God. Then said he unto me, The sea is set in a wide place, that it might be deep and great.

4 But put the case the entrance were narrow, and like a river;

5 Who then could go into the sea to look upon it, and to rule it? if he went not through the narrow, how could he come into the broad?

6 There is also another thing; A city is builded, and set upon a broad field, and is full of all good things:

7 The entrance thereof is narrow, and is set in a dangerous place to fall, like as if there were a fire on the right hand, and on the left a deep water:

8 And one only path between them both, even between the fire and the water, so small that there could but one man go there at once.

9 If this city now were given unto a man for an inheritance, if he never shall pass the danger set before it, how shall he receive this inheritance?

10 And I said, It is so, YHWH. Then said he unto me, Even so also is Israel's portion.

11 Because for their sakes I made the world: and when Adam transgressed my statutes, then was decreed that now is done.

12 Then were the entrances of this world made narrow, full of sorrow and travail: they are but few and evil, full of perils; and very painful.

13 For the entrances of the elder world were wide and sure, and brought immortal fruit.

14 If then they that live labour not to enter these strait and vain things, they can never receive those that are laid up for them.

15 Now therefore why disquietest thou thyself, seeing thou art but a corruptible man? and why art thou moved, whereas thou art but mortal?

16 Why hast thou not considered in thy mind this thing that is to come, rather than that which is present?

17 Then answered I and said, O Lord that bearest rule, thou hast ordained in thy law, that the righteous should inherit these things, but that the ungodly should perish.

18 Nevertheless the righteous shall suffer strait things, and hope for wide: for they that have done wickedly have suffered the strait things, and yet shall not see the wide.

19 And he said unto me. There is no judge above God, and none that hath understanding above the Highest.

20 For there be many that perish in this life, because they despise the law of God that is set before them.

21 For God hath given strait commandment to such as came, what they should do to live, even as they came, and what they should observe to avoid punishment.

22 Nevertheless they were not obedient unto him; but spake against him, and imagined vain things;

23 And deceived themselves by their wicked deeds; and said of the most High, that he is not; and knew not his ways:

24 But his law have they despised, and denied his covenants; in his statutes have they not been faithful, and have not performed his works.

25 And therefore, Esdras, for the empty are empty things, and for the full

are the full things.

26 Behold, the time shall come, that these tokens which I have told thee shall come to pass, and the bride shall appear, and she coming forth shall be seen, that now is withdrawn from the earth.

27 And whosoever is delivered from the foresaid evils shall see my wonders.

28 For my son Jesus shall be revealed with those that be with him, and they that remain shall rejoice within four hundred years.

29 After these years shall my son Christ die, and all men that have life.

30 And the world shall be turned into the old silence seven days, like as in the former judgments: so that no man shall remain.

31 And after seven days the world, that yet awaketh not, shall be raised up, and that shall die that is corrupt

32 And the earth shall restore those that are asleep in her, and so shall the dust those that dwell in silence, and the secret places shall deliver those souls that were committed unto them.

33 And the most High shall appear upon the seat of judgment, and misery shall pass away, and the long suffering shall have an end:

34 But judgment only shall remain, truth shall stand, and faith shall wax strong:

35 And the work shall follow, and the reward shall be shewed, and the good deeds shall be of force, and wicked deeds shall bear no rule.

36 And the pit of torment shall appear, and over against it shall be the place of rest: and the furnace of hell shall be shewed, and over against it the paradise of delight.

37 And then shall the Most High say to the nations that are raised from the dead, See ye and understand whom ye have denied, or whom ye have not served, or whose commandments ye have despised.

38 Look on this side and on that: here is delight and rest, and there fire and torments. Thus shall he speak unto them in the day of judgement:

39 This is a day that hath neither sun, nor moon, nor stars,

40 Neither cloud, nor thunder, nor lightning, neither wind, nor water, nor air, neither darkness, nor evening, nor morning,

41 Neither summer, nor spring, nor heat, nor winter, neither frost, nor cold, nor hail, nor rain, nor dew,

42 Neither noon, nor night, nor dawn, neither shining, nor brightness, nor light, save only the splendour of the glory of the Most High, whereby all shall see the things that are set before them:

43 For it shall endure as it were a week of years.

44 This is my judgement and the ordinance thereof; but to thee only have I shewed these things.

45 And I answered, I said even then, O YHWH, and I say now: Blessed are

they that be now alive and keep the statutes ordained of thee.

46 But as touching them for whom my prayer was made, what shall I say? for who is there of them that be alive that hath not sinned, and who of the sons of men that hath not transgressed thy covenant?

47 And now I see, that the world to come shall bring delight to few, but torments unto many.

48 For an evil heart hath grown up in us, which hath led us astray from these statutes, and hath brought us into corruption and into the ways of death, hath shewed us the paths of perdition and removed us far from life; and that, not a few only, but well nigh all that have been created.

49 And he answered me, and said, Hearken unto me, and I will instruct thee; and I will admonish thee yet again:

50 For this cause the Most High hath not made one world, but two.

51 For whereas thou hast said that the just are not many, but few, and the ungodly abound, hear the answer thereunto.

52 If thou have choice stones exceeding few, wilt thou set for thee over against them according to their number things of lead and clay?

53 And I say, YHWH, how shall this be?

54 And he said unto me, Not only this, but ask the earth, and she shall tell thee; intreat her, and she shall declare unto thee.

55 For thou shalt say unto her, Thou bringest forth gold and silver and brass, and iron also and lead and clay:

56 But silver is more abundant than gold, and brass than silver, and iron than brass, lead than iron, and clay than lead.

57 Judge thou therefore which things are precious and to be desired, whatso is abundant or what is rare.

58 And I said, O Lord that bearest rule, that which is plentiful is of less worth, for that which is more rare is more precious.

59 And he answered me, and said, Weigh within thyself the things that thou hast thought, for he that hath what is hard to get rejoiceth over him that hath what is plentiful.

60 So also is the judgement which I have promised: for I will rejoice over the few that shall be saved, inasmuch as these are they that have made my glory now to prevail, and of whom my name is now named.

61 And I will not grieve over the multitude of them that perish; for these are they that are now like unto vapour, and are become as flame and smoke; they are set on fire and burn hotly, and are quenched.

62 And I answered and said, O thou earth, wherefore hast thou brought forth, if the mind is made out of dust, like as all other created things?

63 For it were better that the dust itself had been unborn, so that the mind might not have been made therefrom.

64 But now the mind groweth with us, and by reason of this we are

tormented, because we perish and know it.

65 Let the race of men lament and the beasts of the field be glad; let all that are born lament, but let the fourfooted beasts and the cattle rejoice.

66 For it is far better with them than with us; for they look not for judgement, neither do they know of torments or of salvation promised unto them after death.

67 For what doth it profit us, that we shall be preserved alive, but yet be afflicted with torment?

68 For all that are born are defiled with iniquities, and are full of sins and laden with offences:

69 And if after death we were not to come into judgement, peradventure it had been better for us.

70 And he answered me, and said, When the Most High made the world, and Adam and all them that came of him, he first prepared the judgement and the things that pertain unto the judgement.

71 And now understand from thine own words, for thou hast said that the mind groweth with us.

72 They therefore that dwell upon the earth shall be tormented for this reason, that having understanding they have wrought iniquity, and receiving commandments have not kept them, and having obtained a law they dealt unfaithfully with that which they received.

73 What then will they have to say in the judgement, or how will they answer in the last times?

74 For how great a time hath the Most High been longsuffering with them that inhabit the world, and not for their sakes, but because of the times which he hath foreordained!

75 And I answered and said, If I have found grace in thy sight, O YHWH, shew this also unto thy servant, whether after death, even now when every one of us giveth up his soul, we shall be kept in rest until those times come, in which thou shalt renew the creation, of whether we shall be tormented forthwith.

76 And he answered me, and said, I will shew thee this also; but join not thyself with them that are scorers, nor number thyself with them that are tormented.

77 For thou hast a treasure of good works laid up with the Most High, but it shall not be shewed thee until the last times.

78 For concerning death the teaching is: When the determinate sentence hath gone forth from the Most High that a man should die, as the spirit leaveth the body to return again to him who gave it, it adoreth the glory of the Most High first of all.

79 And if it be one of those that have been scorers and have not kept the way of the Most High, and that have despised his law, and that hate them



that fear God,

80 These spirits shall not enter into habitations, but shall wander and be in torments forthwith, ever grieving and sad, in seven ways.

81 The first way, because they have despised the law of the Most High.

82 The second way, because they cannot now make a good returning that they may live.

83 The third way, they shall see the reward laid up for them that have believed the covenants of the Most High.

84 The fourth way, they shall consider the torment laid up for themselves in the last days.

85 The fifth way, they shall see the dwelling places of the others guarded by angels, with great quietness.

86 The sixth way, they shall see how forthwith some of them shall pass into torment.

87 The seventh way, which is more grievous than all the aforesaid ways, because they shall pine away in confusion and be consumed with shame, and shall be withered up by fears, seeing the glory of the Most High before whom they have sinned whilst living, and before whom they shall be judged in the last times.

88 Now this is the order of those who have kept the ways of the Most High, when they shall be separated from the corruptible vessel.

89 In the time that they dwelt therein they painfully served the Most High, and were in jeopardy every hour, that they might keep the law of the lawgiver perfectly.

90 Wherefore this is the teaching concerning them:

91 First of all they shall see with great joy the glory of him who taketh them up, for they shall have rest in seven orders.

92 The first order, because they have striven with great labour to overcome the evil thought which was fashioned together with them, that it might not lead them astray from life into death.

93 The second order, because they see the perplexity in which the souls of the ungodly wander, and the punishment that awaiteth them.

94 The third order, they see the witness which he that fashioned them beareth concerning them, that while they lived they kept the law which was given them in trust.

95 The fourth order, they understand the rest which, being gathered in their chambers, they now enjoy with great quietness, guarded by angels, and the glory that awaiteth them in the last days.

96 The fifth order, they rejoice, seeing how they have now escaped from that which is corruptible, and how they shall inherit that which is to come, while they see moreover the straitness and the painfulness from which they have been delivered, and the large room which they shall receive with joy

and immortality.

97 The sixth order, when it is shewed unto them how their face shall shine as the sun, and how they shall be made like unto the light of the stars, being henceforth incorruptible.

98 The seventh order, which is greater than all the aforesaid orders, because they shall rejoice with confidence, and because they shall be bold without confusion, and shall be glad without fear, for they hasten to behold the face of him whom in their lifetime they served, and from whom they shall receive their reward in glory.

99 This is the order of the souls of the just, as from henceforth is announced unto them, and aforesaid are the ways of torture which they that would not give heed shall suffer from henceforth.

100 And I answered and said, Shall time therefore be given unto the souls after they are separated from the bodies, that they may see that whereof thou hast spoken unto me?

101 And he said, Their freedom shall be for seven days, that for seven days they may see the things whereof thou hast been told, and afterwards they shall be gathered together in their habitations.

102 And I answered and said, If I have found favour in thy sight, shew further unto me thy servant whether in the day of judgement the just will be able to intercede for the ungodly or to intreat the Most High for them,

103 Whether fathers for children, or children for parents, or brethren for brethren, or kinsfolk for their next of kin, or friends for them that are most dear.

104 And he answered me, and said, Since thou hast found favour in my sight, I will shew thee this also: The day of judgement is a day of decision, and displayeth unto all the seal of truth; even as now a father sendeth not his son, or a son his father, or a master his slave, or a friend him that is most dear, that in his stead he may be sick, or sleep, or eat, or be healed:

105 So never shall any one pray for another in that day, neither shall one lay a burden on another, for then shall all bear every one his own righteousness or unrighteousness.

106 Then said I, Abraham prayed first for the Sodomites, and Moses for the fathers that sinned in the wilderness:

107 And Jesus after him for Israel in the time of Achan:

108 And Samuel and David for the destruction: and Solomon for them that should come to the sanctuary:

109 And Helias for those that received rain; and for the dead, that he might live:

110 And Ezechias for the people in the time of Sennacherib: and many for many.

111 Even so now, seeing corruption is grown up, and wickedness

increased, and the righteous have prayed for the ungodly: wherefore shall it not be so now also?

112 He answered me, and said, This present life is not the end where much glory doth abide; therefore have they prayed for the weak.

113 But the day of doom shall be the end of this time, and the beginning of the immortality for to come, wherein corruption is past,

114 Intemperance is at an end, infidelity is cut off, righteousness is grown, and truth is sprung up.

115 Then shall no man be able to save him that is destroyed, nor to oppress him that hath gotten the victory.

116 I answered then and said, This is my first and last saying, that it had been better not to have given the earth unto Adam: or else, when it was given him, to have restrained him from sinning.

117 For what profit is it for men now in this present time to live in heaviness, and after death to look for punishment?

118 O thou Adam, what hast thou done? for though it was thou that sinned, thou art not fallen alone, but we all that come of thee.

119 For what profit is it unto us, if there be promised us an immortal time, whereas we have done the works that bring death?

120 And that there is promised us an everlasting hope, whereas ourselves being most wicked are made vain?

121 And that there are laid up for us dwellings of health and safety, whereas we have lived wickedly?

122 And that the glory of the most High is kept to defend them which have led a wary life, whereas we have walked in the most wicked ways of all?

123 And that there should be shewed a paradise, whose fruit endureth for ever, wherein is security and medicine, since we shall not enter into it?

124 (For we have walked in unpleasant places.)

125 And that the faces of them which have used abstinence shall shine above the stars, whereas our faces shall be blacker than darkness?

126 For while we lived and committed iniquity, we considered not that we should begin to suffer for it after death.

127 Then answered he me, and said, This is the condition of the battle, which man that is born upon the earth shall fight;

128 That, if he be overcome, he shall suffer as thou hast said: but if he get the victory, he shall receive the thing that I say.

129 For this is the life whereof Moses spake unto the people while he lived, saying, Choose thee life, that thou mayest live.

130 Nevertheless they believed not him, nor yet the prophets after him, no nor me which have spoken unto them,

131 That there should not be such heaviness in their destruction, as shall

be joy over them that are persuaded to salvation.

132 I answered then, and said, I know, YHWH, that the most High is called merciful, in that he hath mercy upon them which are not yet come into the world,

133 And upon those also that turn to his law;

134 And that he is patient, and long suffereth those that have sinned, as his creatures;

135 And that he is bountiful, for he is ready to give where it needeth;

136 And that he is of great mercy, for he multiplieth more and more mercies to them that are present, and that are past, and also to them which are to come.

137 For if he shall not multiply his mercies, the world would not continue with them that inherit therein.

138 And he pardoneth; for if he did not so of his goodness, that they which have committed iniquities might be eased of them, the ten thousandth part of men should not remain living.

139 And being judge, if he should not forgive them that are cured with his word, and put out the multitude of contentions,

140 There should be very few left peradventure in an innumerable multitude.

## Chapter 6

1 And he answered me, saying, The most High hath made this world for many, but the world to come for few.

2 I will tell thee a similitude, Esdras; As when thou askest the earth, it shall say unto thee, that it giveth much mould whereof earthen vessels are made, but little dust that gold cometh of: even so is the course of this present world.

3 There be many created, but few shall be saved.

4 So answered I and said, Swallow then down, O my soul, understanding, and devour wisdom.

5 For thou hast agreed to give ear, and art willing to prophesy: for thou hast no longer space than only to live.

6 O YHWH, if thou suffer not thy servant, that we may pray before thee, and thou give us seed unto our heart, and culture to our understanding, that there may come fruit of it; how shall each man live that is corrupt, who beareth the place of a man?

7 For thou art alone, and we all one workmanship of thine hands, like as thou hast said.

8 For when the body is fashioned now in the mother's womb, and thou givest it members, thy creature is preserved in fire and water, and nine

months doth thy workmanship endure thy creature which is created in her.  
9 But that which keepeth and is kept shall both be preserved: and when the time cometh, the womb preserved delivereth up the things that grew in it.  
10 For thou hast commanded out of the parts of the body, that is to say, out of the breasts, milk to be given, which is the fruit of the breasts,  
11 That the thing which is fashioned may be nourished for a time, till thou disposest it to thy mercy.  
12 Thou broughtest it up with thy righteousness, and nurturedst it in thy law, and reformedst it with thy judgment.  
13 And thou shalt mortify it as thy creature, and quicken it as thy work.  
14 If therefore thou shalt destroy him which with so great labour was fashioned, it is an easy thing to be ordained by thy commandment, that the thing which was made might be preserved.  
15 Now therefore, YHWH, I will speak; touching man in general, thou knowest best; but touching thy people, for whose sake I am sorry;  
16 And for thine inheritance, for whose cause I mourn; and for Israel, for whom I am heavy; and for Jacob, for whose sake I am troubled;  
17 Therefore will I begin to pray before thee for myself and for them: for I see the falls of us that dwell in the land.  
18 But I have heard the swiftness of the judge which is to come.  
19 Therefore hear my voice, and understand my words, and I shall speak before thee. This is the beginning of the words of Esdras, before he was taken up: and I said,  
20 O YHWH, thou that dwellest in everlastingness which beholdest from above things in the heaven and in the air;  
21 Whose throne is inestimable; whose glory may not be comprehended; before whom the hosts of angels stand with trembling,  
22 Whose service is conversant in wind and fire; whose word is true, and sayings constant; whose commandment is strong, and ordinance fearful;  
23 Whose look drieth up the depths, and indignation maketh the mountains to melt away; which the truth witnesseth:  
24 O hear the prayer of thy servant, and give ear to the petition of thy creature.  
25 For while I live I will speak, and so long as I have understanding I will answer.  
26 O look not upon the sins of thy people; but on them which serve thee in truth.  
27 Regard not the wicked inventions of the heathen, but the desire of those that keep thy testimonies in afflictions.  
28 Think not upon those that have walked feignedly before thee: but remember them, which according to thy will have known thy fear.  
29 Let it not be thy will to destroy them which have lived like beasts; but to

look upon them that have clearly taught thy law.

30 Take thou no indignation at them which are deemed worse than beasts; but love them that always put their trust in thy righteousness and glory.

31 For we and our fathers do languish of such diseases: but because of us sinners thou shalt be called merciful.

32 For if thou hast a desire to have mercy upon us, thou shalt be called merciful, to us namely, that have no works of righteousness.

33 For the just, which have many good works laid up with thee, shall out of their own deeds receive reward.

34 For what is man, that thou shouldest take displeasure at him? or what is a corruptible generation, that thou shouldest be so bitter toward it?

35 For in truth there is no man among them that be born, but he hath dealt wickedly; and among the faithful there is none which hath not done amiss.

36 For in this, O YHWH, thy righteousness and thy goodness shall be declared, if thou be merciful unto them which have not the confidence of good works.

37 Then answered he me, and said, Some things hast thou spoken aright, and according unto thy words it shall be.

38 For indeed I will not think on the disposition of them which have sinned before death, before judgment, before destruction:

39 But I will rejoice over the disposition of the righteous, and I will remember also their pilgrimage, and the salvation, and the reward, that they shall have.

40 Like as I have spoken now, so shall it come to pass.

41 For as the husbandman soweth much seed upon the ground, and planteth many trees, and yet the thing that is sown good in his season cometh not up, neither doth all that is planted take root: even so is it of them that are sown in the world; they shall not all be saved.

42 I answered then and said, If I have found grace, let me speak.

43 Like as the husbandman's seed perisheth, if it come not up, and receive not thy rain in due season; or if there come too much rain, and corrupt it:

44 Even so perisheth man also, which is formed with thy hands, and is called thine own image, because thou art like unto him, for whose sake thou hast made all things, and likened him unto the husbandman's seed.

45 Be not wroth with us but spare thy people, and have mercy upon thine own inheritance: for thou art merciful unto thy creature.

46 Then answered he me, and said, Things present are for the present, and things to cometh for such as be to come.

47 For thou comest far short that thou shouldest be able to love my creature more than I: but I have oftentimes drawn nigh unto thee, and unto it, but never to the unrighteous.

48 In this also thou art marvellous before the most High:  
49 In that thou hast humbled thyself, as it becometh thee, and hast not  
judged thyself worthy to be much glorified among the righteous.  
50 For many great miseries shall be done to them that in the latter time  
shall dwell in the world, because they have walked in great pride.  
51 But understand thou for thyself, and seek out the glory for such as be  
like thee.  
52 For unto you is paradise opened, the tree of life is planted, the time to  
come is prepared, plenteousness is made ready, a city is builded, and rest is  
allowed, yea, perfect goodness and wisdom.  
53 The root of evil is sealed up from you, weakness and the moth is hid  
from you, and corruption is fled into hell to be forgotten:  
54 Sorrows are passed, and in the end is shewed the treasure of  
immortality.  
55 And therefore ask thou no more questions concerning the multitude of  
them that perish.  
56 For when they had taken liberty, they despised the most High, thought  
scorn of his law, and forsook his ways.  
57 Moreover they have trodden down his righteous,  
58 And said in their heart, that there is no God; yea, and that knowing they  
must die.  
59 For as the things aforesaid shalt receive you, so thirst and pain are  
prepared for them: for it was not his will that men should come to nought:  
60 But they which be created have defiled the name of him that made  
them, and were unthankful unto him which prepared life for them.  
61 And therefore is my judgment now at hand.  
62 These things have I not shewed unto all men, but unto thee, and a few  
like thee. Then answered I and said,  
63 Behold, O YHWH, now hast thou shewed me the multitude of the  
wonders, which thou wilt begin to do in the last times: but at what time,  
thou hast not shewed me.

## Chapter 7

1 He answered me then, and said, Measure thou the time diligently in itself:  
and when thou seest part of the signs past, which I have told thee before,  
2 Then shalt thou understand, that it is the very same time, wherein the  
Highest will begin to visit the world which he made.  
3 Therefore when there shall be seen earthquakes and uproars of the  
people in the world:  
4 Then shalt thou well understand, that the most High spake of those  
things from the days that were before thee, even from the beginning.

5 For like as all that is made in the world hath a beginning and an end, and the end is manifest:

6 Even so the times also of the Highest have plain beginnings in wonder and powerful works, and endings in effects and signs.

7 And every one that shall be saved, and shall be able to escape by his works, and by faith, whereby ye have believed,

8 Shall be preserved from the said perils, and shall see my salvation in my land, and within my borders: for I have sanctified them for me from the beginning,

9 Then shall they be in pitiful case, which now have abused my ways: and they that have cast them away despitefully shall dwell in torments.

10 For such as in their life have received benefits, and have not known me;

11 And they that have loathed my law, while they had yet liberty, and, when as yet place of repentance was open unto them, understood not, but despised it;

12 The same must know it after death by pain.

13 And therefore be thou not curious how the ungodly shall be punished, and when: but enquire how the righteous shall be saved, whose the world is, and for whom the world is created.

14 Then answered I and said,

15 I have said before, and now do speak, and will speak it also hereafter, that there be many more of them which perish, than of them which shall be saved:

16 Like as a wave is greater than a drop.

17 And he answered me, saying, Like as the field is, so is also the seed; as the flowers be, such are the colours also; such as the workman is, such also is the work; and as the husbandman is himself, so is his husbandry also: for it was the time of the world.

18 And now when I prepared the world, which was not yet made, even for them to dwell in that now live, no man spake against me.

19 For then every one obeyed: but now the manners of them which are created in this world that is made are corrupted by a perpetual seed, and by a law which is unsearchable rid themselves.

20 So I considered the world, and, behold, there was peril because of the devices that were come into it.

21 And I saw, and spared it greatly, and have kept me a grape of the cluster, and a plant of a great people.

22 Let the multitude perish then, which was born in vain; and let my grape be kept, and my plant; for with great labour have I made it perfect.

23 Nevertheless, if thou wilt cease yet seven days more, (but thou shalt not fast in them,

24 But go into a field of flowers, where no house is builded, and eat only



the flowers of the field; taste no flesh, drink no wine, but eat flowers only;) 25 And pray unto the Highest continually, then will I come and talk with thee.

26 So I went my way into the field which is called Ardath, like as he commanded me; and there I sat among the flowers, and did eat of the herbs of the field, and the meat of the same satisfied me.

27 After seven days I sat upon the grass, and my heart was vexed within me, like as before:

28 And I opened my mouth, and began to talk before the most High, and said,

29 O YHWH, thou that shewest thyself unto us, thou wast shewed unto our fathers in the wilderness, in a place where no man treadeth, in a barren place, when they came out of Egypt.

30 And thou spakest saying, Hear me, O Israel; and mark my words, thou seed of Jacob.

31 For, behold, I sow my law in you, and it shall bring fruit in you, and ye shall be honoured in it for ever.

32 But our fathers, which received the law, kept it not, and observed not thy ordinances: and though the fruit of thy law did not perish, neither could it, for it was thine;

33 Yet they that received it perished, because they kept not the thing that was sown in them.

34 And, lo, it is a custom, when the ground hath received seed, or the sea a ship, or any vessel meat or drink, that, that being perished wherein it was sown or cast into,

35 That thing also which was sown, or cast therein, or received, doth perish, and remaineth not with us: but with us it hath not happened so.

36 For we that have received the law perish by sin, and our heart also which received it

37 Notwithstanding the law perisheth not, but remaineth in his force.

38 And when I spake these things in my heart, I looked back with mine eyes, and upon the right side I saw a woman, and, behold, she mourned and wept with a loud voice, and was much grieved in heart, and her clothes were rent, and she had ashes upon her head.

39 Then let I my thoughts go that I was in, and turned me unto her,

40 And said unto her, Wherefore weepest thou? why art thou so grieved in thy mind?

41 And she said unto me, Sir, let me alone, that I may bewail myself, and add unto my sorrow, for I am sore vexed in my mind, and brought very low.

42 And I said unto her, What aileth thee? tell me.

43 She said unto me, I thy servant have been barren, and had no child,

though I had an husband thirty years,

44 And those thirty years I did nothing else day and night, and every hour, but make my prayer to the Highest.

45 After thirty years God heard me thine handmaid, looked upon my misery, considered my trouble, and gave me a son: and I was very glad of him, so was my husband also, and all my neighbours: and we gave great honour unto the Almighty.

46 And I nourished him with great travail.

47 So when he grew up, and came to the time that he should have a wife, I made a feast.

## Chapter 8

1 And it so came to pass, that when my son was entered into his wedding chamber, he fell down, and died.

2 Then we all overthrew the lights, and all my neighbours rose up to comfort me: so I took my rest unto the second day at night.

3 And it came to pass, when they had all left off to comfort me, to the end I might be quiet; then rose I up by night and fled, and came hither into this field, as thou seest.

4 And I do now purpose not to return into the city, but here to stay, and neither to eat nor drink, but continually to mourn and to fast until I die.

5 Then left I the meditations wherein I was, and spake to her in anger, saying,

6 Thou foolish woman above all other, seest thou not our mourning, and what happeneth unto us?

7 How that Sion our mother is full of all heaviness, and much humbled, mourning very sore?

8 And now, seeing we all mourn and are sad, for we are all in heaviness, art thou grieved for one son?

9 For ask the earth, and she shall tell thee, that it is she which ought to mourn for the fall of so many that grow upon her.

10 For out of her came all at the first, and out of her shall all others come, and, behold, they walk almost all into destruction, and a multitude of them is utterly rooted out.

11 Who then should make more mourning than she, that hath lost so great a multitude; and not thou, which art sorry but for one?

12 But if thou sayest unto me, My lamentation is not like the earth's, because I have lost the fruit of my womb, which I brought forth with pains, and bare with sorrows;

13 But the earth not so: for the multitude present in it according to the course of the earth is gone, as it came:

14 Then say I unto thee, Like as thou hast brought forth with labour; even so the earth also hath given her fruit, namely, man, ever since the beginning unto him that made her.

15 Now therefore keep thy sorrow to thyself, and bear with a good courage that which hath befallen thee.

16 For if thou shalt acknowledge the determination of God to be just, thou shalt both receive thy son in time, and shalt be commended among women.

17 Go thy way then into the city to thine husband.

18 And she said unto me, That will I not do: I will not go into the city, but here will I die.

19 So I proceeded to speak further unto her, and said,

20 Do not so, but be counselled. by me: for how many are the adversities of Sion? be comforted in regard of the sorrow of Jerusalem.

21 For thou seest that our sanctuary is laid waste, our altar broken down, our temple destroyed;

22 Our psaltery is laid on the ground, our song is put to silence, our rejoicing is at an end, the light of our candlestick is put out, the ark of our covenant is spoiled, our holy things are defiled, and the name that is called upon us is almost profaned: our children are put to shame, our priests are burnt, our Levites are gone into captivity, our virgins are defiled, and our wives ravished; our righteous men carried away, our little ones destroyed, our young men are brought in bondage, and our strong men are become weak;

23 And, which is the greatest of all, the seal of Sion hath now lost her honour; for she is delivered into the hands of them that hate us.

24 And therefore shake off thy great heaviness, and put away the multitude of sorrows, that the Mighty may be merciful unto thee again, and the Highest shall give thee rest and ease from thy labour.

25 And it came to pass while I was talking with her, behold, her face upon a sudden shined exceedingly, and her countenance glistered, so that I was afraid of her, and mused what it might be.

26 And, behold, suddenly she made a great cry very fearful: so that the earth shook at the noise of the woman.

27 And I looked, and, behold, the woman appeared unto me no more, but there was a city builded, and a large place shewed itself from the foundations: then was I afraid, and cried with a loud voice, and said,

28 Where is Uriel the angel, who came unto me at the first? for he hath caused me to fall into many trances, and mine end is turned into corruption, and my prayer to rebuke.

29 And as I was speaking these words behold, he came unto me, and looked upon me.

30 And, lo, I lay as one that had been dead, and mine understanding was taken from me: and he took me by the right hand, and comforted me, and set me upon my feet, and said unto me,

31 What aileth thee? and why art thou so disquieted? and why is thine understanding troubled, and the thoughts of thine heart?

32 And I said, Because thou hast forsaken me, and yet I did according to thy words, and I went into the field, and, lo, I have seen, and yet see, that I am not able to express.

33 And he said unto me, Stand up manfully, and I will advise thee.

34 Then said I, Speak on, my lord, in me; only forsake me not, lest I die frustrate of my hope.

35 For I have seen that I knew not, and hear that I do not know.

36 Or is my sense deceived, or my soul in a dream?

37 Now therefore I beseech thee that thou wilt shew thy servant of this vision.

38 He answered me then, and said, Hear me, and I shall inform thee, and tell thee wherefore thou art afraid: for the Highest will reveal many secret things unto thee.

39 He hath seen that thy way is right: for that thou sorrowest continually for thy people, and makest great lamentation for Sion.

40 This therefore is the meaning of the vision which thou lately sawest:

41 Thou sawest a woman mourning, and thou beganst to comfort her:

42 But now seest thou the likeness of the woman no more, but there appeared unto thee a city builded.

43 And whereas she told thee of the death of her son, this is the solution:

44 This woman, whom thou sawest is Sion: and whereas she said unto thee, even she whom thou seest as a city builded,

45 Whereas, I say, she said unto thee, that she hath been thirty years barren: those are the thirty years wherein there was no offering made in her.

46 But after thirty years Solomon builded the city and offered offerings: and then bare the barren a son.

47 And whereas she told thee that she nourished him with labour: that was the dwelling in Jerusalem.

48 But whereas she said unto thee, That my son coming into his marriage chamber happened to have a fall, and died: this was the destruction that came to Jerusalem.

49 And, behold, thou sawest her likeness, and because she mourned for her son, thou beganst to comfort her: and of these things which have chanced, these are to be opened unto thee.

50 For now the most High seeth that thou art grieved unfeignedly, and sufferest from thy whole heart for her, so hath he shewed thee the brightness of her glory, and the comeliness of her beauty:

51 And therefore I bade thee remain in the field where no house was builded:

52 For I knew that the Highest would shew this unto thee.

53 Therefore I commanded thee to go into the field, where no foundation of any building was.

54 For in the place wherein the Highest beginneth to shew his city, there can no man's building be able to stand.

55 And therefore fear not, let not thine heart be affrighted, but go thy way in, and see the beauty and greatness of the building, as much as thine eyes be able to see:

56 And then shalt thou hear as much as thine ears may comprehend.

57 For thou art blessed above many other, and art called with the Highest; and so are but few.

58 But to morrow at night thou shalt remain here;

59 And so shall the Highest shew thee visions of the high things, which the most High will do unto them that dwell upon the earth in the last days. So I slept that night and another, like as he commanded me.

## Chapter 9

1 Then saw I a dream, and, behold, there came up from the sea an eagle, which had twelve feathered wings, and three heads.

2 And I saw, and, behold, she spread her wings over all the earth, and all the winds of the air blew on her, and were gathered together.

3 And I beheld, and out of her feathers there grew other contrary feathers; and they became little feathers and small.

4 But her heads were at rest: the head in the midst was greater than the other, yet rested it with the residue.

5 Moreover I beheld, and, lo, the eagle flew with her feathers, and reigned upon earth, and over them that dwelt therein.

6 And I saw that all things under heaven were subject unto her, and no man spake against her, no, not one creature upon earth.

7 And I beheld, and, lo, the eagle rose upon her talons, and spake to her feathers, saying,

8 Watch not all at once: sleep every one in his own place, and watch by course:

9 But let the heads be preserved for the last.

10 And I beheld, and, lo, the voice went not out of her heads, but from the midst of her body.

11 And I numbered her contrary feathers, and, behold, there were eight of them.

12 And I looked, and, behold, on the right side there arose one feather, and

reigned over all the earth;

13 And so it was, that when it reigned, the end of it came, and the place thereof appeared no more: so the next following stood up. and reigned, and had a great time;

14 And it happened, that when it reigned, the end of it came also, like as the first, so that it appeared no more.

15 Then came there a voice unto it, and said,

16 Hear thou that hast borne rule over the earth so long: this I say unto thee, before thou beginnest to appear no more,

17 There shall none after thee attain unto thy time, neither unto the half thereof.

18 Then arose the third, and reigned as the other before, and appeared no more also.

19 So went it with all the residue one after another, as that every one reigned, and then appeared no more.

20 Then I beheld, and, lo, in process of time the feathers that followed stood up upon the right side, that they might rule also; and some of them ruled, but within a while they appeared no more:

21 For some of them were set up, but ruled not.

22 After this I looked, and, behold, the twelve feathers appeared no more, nor the two little feathers:

23 And there was no more upon the eagle's body, but three heads that rested, and six little wings.

24 Then saw I also that two little feathers divided themselves from the six, and remained under the head that was upon the right side: for the four continued in their place.

25 And I beheld, and, lo, the feathers that were under the wing thought to set up themselves and to have the rule.

26 And I beheld, and, lo, there was one set up, but shortly it appeared no more.

27 And the second was sooner away than the first.

28 And I beheld, and, lo, the two that remained thought also in themselves to reign:

29 And when they so thought, behold, there awaked one of the heads that were at rest, namely, it that was in the midst; for that was greater than the two other heads.

30 And then I saw that the two other heads were joined with it.

31 And, behold, the head was turned with them that were with it, and did eat up the two feathers under the wing that would have reigned.

32 But this head put the whole earth in fear, and bare rule in it over all those that dwelt upon the earth with much oppression; and it had the governance of the world more than all the wings that had been.

33 And after this I beheld, and, lo, the head that was in the midst suddenly appeared no more, like as the wings.  
34 But there remained the two heads, which also in like sort ruled upon the earth, and over those that dwelt therein.  
35 And I beheld, and, lo, the head upon the right side devoured it that was upon the left side.  
36 Then I heard a voice, which said unto me, Look before thee, and consider the thing that thou seest.  
37 And I beheld, and lo, as it were a roaring lion chased out of the wood: and I saw that he sent out a man's voice unto the eagle, and said,  
38 Hear thou, I will talk with thee, and the Highest shall say unto thee,  
39 Art not thou it that remainest of the four beasts, whom I made to reign in my world, that the end of their times might come through them?  
40 And the fourth came, and overcame all the beasts that were past, and had power over the world with great fearfulness, and over the whole compass of the earth with much wicked oppression; and so long time dwelt he upon the earth with deceit.  
41 For the earth hast thou not judged with truth.  
42 For thou hast afflicted the meek, thou hast hurt the peaceable, thou hast loved liars, and destroyed the dwellings of them that brought forth fruit, and hast cast down the walls of such as did thee no harm.  
43 Therefore is thy wrongful dealing come up unto the Highest, and thy pride unto the Mighty.  
44 The Highest also hath looked upon the proud times, and, behold, they are ended, and his abominations are fulfilled.  
45 And therefore appear no more, thou eagle, nor thy horrible wings, nor thy wicked feathers nor thy malicious heads, nor thy hurtful claws, nor all thy vain body:  
46 That all the earth may be refreshed, and may return, being delivered from thy violence, and that she may hope for the judgment and mercy of him that made her.

## Chapter 10

1 And it came to pass, whiles the lion spake these words unto the eagle, I saw,  
2 And, behold, the head that remained and the four wings appeared no more, and the two went unto it and set themselves up to reign, and their kingdom was small, and full of uproar.  
3 And I saw, and, behold, they appeared no more, and the whole body of the eagle was burnt so that the earth was in great fear: then awaked I out of the trouble and trance of my mind, and from great fear, and said unto

my spirit,

4 Lo, this hast thou done unto me, in that thou searchest out the ways of the Highest.

5 Lo, yet am I weary in my mind, and very weak in my spirit; and little strength is there in me, for the great fear wherewith I was afflicted this night.

6 Therefore will I now beseech the Highest, that he will comfort me unto the end.

7 And I said, Lord that bearest rule, if I have found grace before thy sight, and if I am justified with thee before many others, and if my prayer indeed be come up before thy face;

8 Comfort me then, and shew me thy servant the interpretation and plain difference of this fearful vision, that thou mayest perfectly comfort my soul.

9 For thou hast judged me worthy to shew me the last times.

10 And he said unto me, This is the interpretation of the vision:

11 The eagle, whom thou sawest come up from the sea, is the kingdom which was seen in the vision of thy brother Daniel.

12 But it was not expounded unto him, therefore now I declare it unto thee.

13 Behold, the days will come, that there shall rise up a kingdom upon earth, and it shall be feared above all the kingdoms that were before it.

14 In the same shall twelve kings reign, one after another:

15 Whereof the second shall begin to reign, and shall have more time than any of the twelve.

16 And this do the twelve wings signify, which thou sawest.

17 As for the voice which thou heardest speak, and that thou sawest not to go out from the heads but from the midst of the body thereof, this is the interpretation:

18 That after the time of that kingdom there shall arise great strivings, and it shall stand in peril of failing: nevertheless it shall not then fall, but shall be restored again to his beginning.

19 And whereas thou sawest the eight small under feathers sticking to her wings, this is the interpretation:

20 That in him there shall arise eight kings, whose times shall be but small, and their years swift.

21 And two of them shall perish, the middle time approaching: four shall be kept until their end begin to approach: but two shall be kept unto the end.

22 And whereas thou sawest three heads resting, this is the interpretation:

23 In his last days shall the most High raise up three kingdoms, and renew many things therein, and they shall have the dominion of the earth,



24 And of those that dwell therein, with much oppression, above all those that were before them: therefore are they called the heads of the eagle.

25 For these are they that shall accomplish his wickedness, and that shall finish his last end.

26 And whereas thou sawest that the great head appeared no more, it signifieth that one of them shall die upon his bed, and yet with pain.

27 For the two that remain shall be slain with the sword.

28 For the sword of the one shall devour the other: but at the last shall he fall through the sword himself.

29 And whereas thou sawest two feathers under the wings passing over the head that is on the right side;

30 It signifieth that these are they, whom the Highest hath kept unto their end: this is the small kingdom and full of trouble, as thou sawest.

31 And the lion, whom thou sawest rising up out of the wood, and roaring, and speaking to the eagle, and rebuking her for her unrighteousness with all the words which thou hast heard;

32 This is the anointed, which the Highest hath kept for them and for their wickedness unto the end: he shall reprove them, and shall upbraid them with their cruelty.

33 For he shall set them before him alive in judgment, and shall rebuke them, and correct them.

34 For the rest of my people shall he deliver with mercy, those that have been pressed upon my borders, and he shall make them joyful until the coming of the day of judgment, whereof I have spoken unto thee from the the beginning.

35 This is the dream that thou sawest, and these are the interpretations.

36 Thou only hast been meet to know this secret of the Highest.

37 Therefore write all these things that thou hast seen in a book, and hide them:

38 And teach them to the wise of the people, whose hearts thou knowest may comprehend and keep these secrets.

39 But wait thou here thyself yet seven days more, that it may be shewed thee, whatsoever it pleaseth the Highest to declare unto thee. And with that he went his way.

40 And it came to pass, when all the people saw that the seven days were past, and I not come again into the city, they gathered them all together, from the least unto the greatest, and came unto me, and said,

41 What have we offended thee? and what evil have we done against thee, that thou forsakest us, and sittest here in this place?

42 For of all the prophets thou only art left us, as a cluster of the vintage, and as a candle in a dark place, and as a haven or ship preserved from the tempest.

43 Are not the evils which are come to us sufficient?  
44 If thou shalt forsake us, how much better had it been for us, if we also had been burned in the midst of Sion?  
45 For we are not better than they that died there. And they wept with a loud voice. Then answered I them, and said,  
46 Be of good comfort, O Israel; and be not heavy, thou house of Jacob:  
47 For the Highest hath you in remembrance, and the Mighty hath not forgotten you in temptation.  
48 As for me, I have not forsaken you, neither am I departed from you: but am come into this place, to pray for the desolation of Sion, and that I might seek mercy for the low estate of your sanctuary.  
49 And now go your way home every man, and after these days will I come unto you.  
50 So the people went their way into the city, like as I commanded them:  
51 But I remained still in the field seven days, as the angel commanded me; and did eat only in those days of the flowers of the field, and had my meat of the herbs

## Chapter 11

1 And it came to pass after seven days, I dreamed a dream by night:  
2 And, lo, there arose a wind from the sea, that it moved all the waves thereof.  
3 And I beheld, and, lo, that man waxed strong with the thousands of heaven: and when he turned his countenance to look, all the things trembled that were seen under him.  
4 And whensoever the voice went out of his mouth, all they burned that heard his voice, like as the earth faileth when it feeleth the fire.  
5 And after this I beheld, and, lo, there was gathered together a multitude of men, out of number, from the four winds of the heaven, to subdue the man that came out of the sea  
6 But I beheld, and, lo, he had graved himself a great mountain, and flew up upon it.  
7 But I would have seen the region or place whereout the hill was graven, and I could not.  
8 And after this I beheld, and, lo, all they which were gathered together to subdue him were sore afraid, and yet durst fight.  
9 And, lo, as he saw the violence of the multitude that came, he neither lifted up his hand, nor held sword, nor any instrument of war:  
10 But only I saw that he sent out of his mouth as it had been a blast of fire, and out of his lips a flaming breath, and out of his tongue he cast out sparks and tempests.

11 And they were all mixed together; the blast of fire, the flaming breath, and the great tempest; and fell with violence upon the multitude which was prepared to fight, and burned them up every one, so that upon a sudden of an innumerable multitude nothing was to be perceived, but only dust and smell of smoke: when I saw this I was afraid.

12 Afterward saw I the same man come down from the mountain, and call unto him another peaceable Multitude.

13 And there came much people unto him, whereof some were glad, some were sorry, and some of them were bound, and other some brought of them that were offered: then was I sick through great fear, and I awaked, and said,

14 Thou hast shewed thy servant these wonders from the beginning, and hast counted me worthy that thou shouldst receive my prayer:

15 Shew me now yet the interpretation of this dream.

16 For as I conceive in mine understanding, woe unto them that shall be left in those days and much more woe unto them that are not left behind!

17 For they that were not left were in heaviness.

18 Now understand I the things that are laid up in the latter days, which shall happen unto them, and to those that are left behind.

19 Therefore are they come into great perils and many necessities, like as these dreams declare.

20 Yet is it easier for him that is in danger to come into these things, than to pass away as a cloud out of the world, and not to see the things that happen in the last days. And he answered unto me, and said,

21 The interpretation of the vision shall I shew thee, and I will open unto thee the thing that thou hast required.

22 Whereas thou hast spoken of them that are left behind, this is the interpretation:

23 He that shall endure the peril in that time hath kept himself: they that be fallen into danger are such as have works, and faith toward the Almighty.

24 Know this therefore, that they which be left behind are more blessed than they that be dead.

25 This is the meaning of the vision: Whereas thou sawest a man coming up from the midst of the sea

26 The same is he whom God the Highest hath kept a great season, which by his own self shall deliver his creature: and he shall order them that are left behind.

27 And whereas thou sawest, that out of his mouth there came as a blast of wind, and fire, and storm;

28 And that he held neither sword, nor any instrument of war, but that the rushing in of him destroyed the whole multitude that came to subdue him; this is the interpretation:

29 Behold, the days come, when the most High will begin to deliver them that are upon the earth.

30 And he shall come to the astonishment of them that dwell on the earth.

31 And one shall undertake to fight against another, one city against another, one place against another, one people against another, and one realm against another.

32 And the time shall be when these things shall come to pass, and the signs shall happen which I shewed thee before, and then shall my Son be declared, whom thou sawest as a man ascending.

33 And when all the people hear his voice, every man shall in their own land leave the battle they have one against another.

34 And an innumerable multitude shall be gathered together, as thou sawest them, willing to come, and to overcome him by fighting.

35 But he shall stand upon the top of the mount Sion.

36 And Sion shall come, and shall be shewed to all men, being prepared and builded, like as thou sawest the hill graven without hands.

37 And this my Son shall rebuke the wicked inventions of those nations, which for their wicked life are fallen into the tempest;

38 And shall lay before them their evil thoughts, and the torments wherewith they shall begin to be tormented, which are like unto a flame: and he shall destroy them without labour by the law which is like unto me.

39 And whereas thou sawest that he gathered another peaceable multitude unto him;

40 Those are the ten tribes, which were carried away prisoners out of their own land in the time of Osea the king, whom Salmanasar the king of Assyria led away captive, and he carried them over the waters, and so came they into another land.

41 But they took this counsel among themselves, that they would leave the multitude of the heathen, and go forth into a further country, where never mankind dwelt,

42 That they might there keep their statutes, which they never kept in their own land.

43 And they entered into Euphrates by the narrow places of the river.

44 For the most High then shewed signs for them, and held still the flood, till they were passed over.

45 For through that country there was a great way to go, namely, of a year and a half: and the same region is called Arsareth.

46 Then dwelt they there until the latter time; and now when they shall begin to come,

47 The Highest shall stay the springs of the stream again, that they may go through: therefore sawest thou the multitude with peace.

48 But those that be left behind of thy people are they that are found

within my borders.

49 Now when he destroyeth the multitude of the nations that are gathered together, he shall defend his people that remain.

50 And then shall he shew them great wonders.

51 Then said I, O Lord that bearest rule, shew me this: Wherefore have I seen the man coming up from the midst of the sea?

52 And he said unto me, Like as thou canst neither seek out nor know the things that are in the deep of the sea even so can no man upon earth see my Son, or those that be with him, but in the day time.

53 This is the interpretation of the dream which thou sawest, and whereby thou only art here lightened.

54 For thou hast forsaken thine own way, and applied thy diligence unto my law, and sought it.

55 Thy life hast thou ordered in wisdom, and hast called understanding thy mother.

56 And therefore have I shewed thee the treasures of the Highest: after other three days I will speak other things unto thee, and declare unto thee mighty and wondrous things.

57 Then went I forth into the field, giving praise and thanks greatly unto the most High because of his wonders which he did in time;

58 And because he governeth the same, and such things as fall in their seasons: and there I sat three days.

## Chapter 12

1 And it came to pass upon the third day, I sat under an oak, and, behold, there came a voice out of a bush over against me, and said, Esdras, Esdras.

2 And I said, Here am I, YHWH. And I stood up upon my feet.

3 Then said he unto me, In the bush I did manifestly reveal myself unto Moses, and talked with him, when my people served in Egypt:

4 And I sent him and led my people out of Egypt, and brought him up to the mount of where I held him by me a long season,

5 And told him many wondrous things, and shewed him the secrets of the times, and the end; and commanded him, saying,

6 These words shalt thou declare, and these shalt thou hide.

7 And now I say unto thee,

8 That thou lay up in thy heart the signs that I have shewed, and the dreams that thou hast seen, and the interpretations which thou hast heard:

9 For thou shalt be taken away from all, and from henceforth thou shalt remain with my Son, and with such as be like thee, until the times be ended.

10 For the world hath lost his youth, and the times begin to wax old.

11 For the world is divided into twelve parts, and the ten parts of it are gone already, and half of a tenth part:

12 And there remaineth that which is after the half of the tenth part.

13 Now therefore set thine house in order, and reprove thy people, comfort such of them as be in trouble, and now renounce corruption,

14 Let go from thee mortal thoughts, cast away the burdens of man, put off now the weak nature,

15 And set aside the thoughts that are most heavy unto thee, and haste thee to flee from these times.

16 For yet greater evils than those which thou hast seen happen shall be done hereafter.

17 For look how much the world shall be weaker through age, so much the more shall evils increase upon them that dwell therein.

18 For the time is fled far away, and leasing is hard at hand: for now hasteth the vision to come, which thou hast seen.

19 Then answered I before thee, and said,

20 Behold, YHWH, I will go, as thou hast commanded me, and reprove the people which are present: but they that shall be born afterward, who shall admonish them? thus the world is set in darkness, and they that dwell therein are without light.

21 For thy law is burnt, therefore no man knoweth the things that are done of thee, or the work that shall begin.

22 But if I have found grace before thee, send the Holy Ghost into me, and I shall write all that hath been done in the world since the beginning, which were written in thy law, that men may find thy path, and that they which will live in the latter days may live.

23 And he answered me, saying, Go thy way, gather the people together, and say unto them, that they seek thee not for forty days.

24 But look thou prepare thee many box trees, and take with thee Sarea, Dabria, Selemia, Ecanus, and Asiel, these five which are ready to write swiftly;

25 And come hither, and I shall light a candle of understanding in thine heart, which shall not be put out, till the things be performed which thou shalt begin to write.

26 And when thou hast done, some things shalt thou publish, and some things shalt thou shew secretly to the wise: to morrow this hour shalt thou begin to write.

27 Then went I forth, as he commanded, and gathered all the people together, and said,

28 Hear these words, O Israel.

29 Our fathers at the beginning were strangers in Egypt, from whence they were delivered:

30 And received the law of life, which they kept not, which ye also have transgressed after them.

31 Then was the land, even the land of Sion, parted among you by lot: but your fathers, and ye yourselves, have done unrighteousness, and have not kept the ways which the Highest commanded you.

32 And forasmuch as he is a righteous judge, he took from you in time the thing that he had given you.

33 And now are ye here, and your brethren among you.

34 Therefore if so be that ye will subdue your own understanding, and reform your hearts, ye shall be kept alive and after death ye shall obtain mercy.

35 For after death shall the judgment come, when we shall live again: and then shall the names of the righteous be manifest, and the works of the ungodly shall be declared.

36 Let no man therefore come unto me now, nor seek after me these forty days.

37 So I took the five men, as he commanded me, and we went into the field, and remained there.

38 And the next day, behold, a voice called me, saying, Esdras, open thy mouth, and drink that I give thee to drink.

39 Then opened I my mouth, and, behold, he reached me a full cup, which was full as it were with water, but the colour of it was like fire.

40 And I took it, and drank: and when I had drunk of it, my heart uttered understanding, and wisdom grew in my breast, for my spirit strengthened my memory:

41 And my mouth was opened, and shut no more.

42 The Highest gave understanding unto the five men, and they wrote the wonderful visions of the night that were told, which they knew not: and they sat forty days, and they wrote in the day, and at night they ate bread.

43 As for me. I spake in the day, and I held not my tongue by night.

44 In forty days they wrote two hundred and four books.

45 And it came to pass, when the forty days were filled, that the Highest spake, saying, The first that thou hast written publish openly, that the worthy and unworthy may read it:

46 But keep the seventy last, that thou mayest deliver them only to such as be wise among the people:

47 For in them is the spring of understanding, the fountain of wisdom, and the stream of knowledge.

48 And I did so.

# Additional Readings of Daniel

## Chapter 1

The Story of Susanna, placed before Daniel 1:1.

1 There dwelt a man in Babylon, called Joacim:

2 And he took a wife, whose name was Susanna, the daughter of Chelcias, a very fair woman, and one that feared YHWH.

3 Her parents also were righteous, and taught their daughter according to the law of Moses.

4 Now Joacim was a great rich man, and had a fair garden joining unto his house: and to him resorted the Jews; because he was more honourable than all others.

5 The same year were appointed two of the ancients of the people to be judges, such as YHWH spake of, that wickedness came from Babylon from ancient judges, who seemed to govern the people.

6 These kept much at Joacim's house: and all that had any suits in law came unto them.

7 Now when the people departed away at noon, Susanna went into her husband's garden to walk.

8 And the two elders saw her going in every day, and walking; so that their lust was inflamed toward her.

9 And they perverted their own mind, and turned away their eyes, that they might not look unto heaven, nor remember just judgments.

10 And albeit they both were wounded with her love, yet durst not one shew another his grief.

11 For they were ashamed to declare their lust, that they desired to have to do with her.

12 Yet they watched diligently from day to day to see her.

13 And the one said to the other, Let us now go home: for it is dinner time.

14 So when they were gone out, they parted the one from the other, and turning back again they came to the same place; and after that they had asked one another the cause, they acknowledged their lust: then appointed they a time both together, when they might find her alone.

15 And it fell out, as they watched a fit time, she went in as before with two maids only, and she was desirous to wash herself in the garden: for it was hot.

16 And there was no body there save the two elders, that had hid themselves, and watched her.



17 Then she said to her maids, Bring me oil and washing balls, and shut the garden doors, that I may wash me.

18 And they did as she bade them, and shut the garden doors, and went out themselves at privy doors to fetch the things that she had commanded them: but they saw not the elders, because they were hid.

19 Now when the maids were gone forth, the two elders rose up, and ran unto her, saying,

20 Behold, the garden doors are shut, that no man can see us, and we are in love with thee; therefore consent unto us, and lie with us.

21 If thou wilt not, we will bear witness against thee, that a young man was with thee: and therefore thou didst send away thy maids from thee.

22 Then Susanna sighed, and said, I am straitened on every side: for if I do this thing, it is death unto me: and if I do it not I cannot escape your hands.

23 It is better for me to fall into your hands, and not do it, than to sin in the sight of YHWH.

24 With that Susanna cried with a loud voice: and the two elders cried out against her.

25 Then ran the one, and opened the garden door.

26 So when the servants of the house heard the cry in the garden, they rushed in at the privy door, to see what was done unto her.

27 But when the elders had declared their matter, the servants were greatly ashamed: for there was never such a report made of Susanna.

28 And it came to pass the next day, when the people were assembled to her husband Joacim, the two elders came also full of mischievous imagination against Susanna to put her to death;

29 And said before the people, Send for Susanna, the daughter of Chelcias, Joacim's wife. And so they sent.

30 So she came with her father and mother, her children, and all her kindred.

31 Now Susanna was a very delicate woman, and beauteous to behold.

32 And these wicked men commanded to uncover her face, (for she was covered) that they might be filled with her beauty.

33 Therefore her friends and all that saw her wept.

34 Then the two elders stood up in the midst of the people, and laid their hands upon her head.

35 And she weeping looked up toward heaven: for her heart trusted in YHWH.

36 And the elders said, As we walked in the garden alone, this woman came in with two maids, and shut the garden doors, and sent the maids away.

37 Then a young man, who there was hid, came unto her, and lay with her.

38 Then we that stood in a corner of the garden, seeing this wickedness,

ran unto them.

39 And when we saw them together, the man we could not hold: for he was stronger than we, and opened the door, and leaped out.

40 But having taken this woman, we asked who the young man was, but she would not tell us: these things do we testify.

41 Then the assembly believed them as those that were the elders and judges of the people: so they condemned her to death.

42 Then Susanna cried out with a loud voice, and said, O everlasting God, that knowest the secrets, and knowest all things before they be:

43 Thou knowest that they have borne false witness against me, and, behold, I must die; whereas I never did such things as these men have maliciously invented against me.

44 And YHWH heard her voice.

45 Therefore when she was led to be put to death, YHWH raised up the holy spirit of a young youth whose name was Daniel:

46 Who cried with a loud voice, I am clear from the blood of this woman.

47 Then all the people turned them toward him, and said, What mean these words that thou hast spoken?

48 So he standing in the midst of them said, Are ye such fools, ye sons of Israel, that without examination or knowledge of the truth ye have condemned a daughter of Israel?

49 Return again to the place of judgment: for they have borne false witness against her.

50 Wherefore all the people turned again in haste, and the elders said unto him, Come, sit down among us, and shew it us, seeing God hath given thee the honour of an elder.

51 Then said Daniel unto them, Put these two aside one far from another, and I will examine them.

52 So when they were put asunder one from another, he called one of them, and said unto him, O thou that art waxen old in wickedness, now thy sins which thou hast committed aforetime are come to light.

53 For thou hast pronounced false judgment and hast condemned the innocent and hast let the guilty go free; albeit YHWH saith, The innocent and righteous shalt thou not slay.

54 Now then, if thou hast seen her, tell me, Under what tree sawest thou them companying together? Who answered, Under a mastick tree.

55 And Daniel said, Very well; thou hast lied against thine own head; for even now the angel of God hath received the sentence of God to cut thee in two.

56 So he put him aside, and commanded to bring the other, and said unto him, O thou seed of Chanaan, and not of Juda, beauty hath deceived thee, and lust hath perverted thine heart.

57 Thus have ye dealt with the daughters of Israel, and they for fear accompanied with you: but the daughter of Juda would not abide your wickedness.

58 Now therefore tell me, Under what tree didst thou take them accompanying together? Who answered, Under an holm tree.

59 Then said Daniel unto him, Well; thou hast also lied against thine own head: for the angel of God waiteth with the sword to cut thee in two, that he may destroy you.

60 With that all the assembly cried out with a loud voice, and praised God, who saveth them that trust in him.

61 And they arose against the two elders, for Daniel had convicted them of false witness by their own mouth:

62 And according to the law of Moses they did unto them in such sort as they maliciously intended to do to their neighbour: and they put them to death. Thus the innocent blood was saved the same day.

63 Therefore Chelcias and his wife praised God for their daughter Susanna, with Joacim her husband, and all the kindred, because there was no dishonesty found in her.

64 From that day forth was Daniel had in great reputation in the sight of the people.

## Chapter 2

The Prayer of Azariah, placed between Daniel 3:23 an 3:24.

1 And they walked in the midst of the fire, praising God, and blessing YHWH.

2 Then Azariah stood up, and prayed on this manner; and opening his mouth in the midst of the fire said,

3 Blessed art thou, O YHWH God of our fathers: thy name is worthy to be praised and glorified for evermore:

4 For thou art righteous in all the things that thou hast done to us: yea, true are all thy works, thy ways are right, and all thy judgments truth.

5 In all the things that thou hast brought upon us, and upon the holy city of our fathers, even Jerusalem, thou hast executed true judgment: for according to truth and judgment didst thou bring all these things upon us because of our sins.

6 For we have sinned and committed iniquity, departing from thee.

7 In all things have we trespassed, and not obeyed thy commandments, nor kept them, neither done as thou hast commanded us, that it might go well with us.

8 Wherefore all that thou hast brought upon us, and every thing that thou

hast done to us, thou hast done in true judgment.

9 And thou didst deliver us into the hands of lawless enemies, most hateful forsakers of God, and to an unjust king, and the most wicked in all the world.

10 And now we cannot open our mouths, we are become a shame and reproach to thy servants; and to them that worship thee.

11 Yet deliver us not up wholly, for thy name's sake, neither disannul thou thy covenant:

12 And cause not thy mercy to depart from us, for thy beloved Abraham's sake, for thy servant Issac's sake, and for thy holy Israel's sake;

13 To whom thou hast spoken and promised, that thou wouldst multiply their seed as the stars of heaven, and as the sand that lieth upon the seashore.

14 For we, O YHWH, are become less than any nation, and be kept under this day in all the world because of our sins.

15 Neither is there at this time prince, or prophet, or leader, or burnt offering, or sacrifice, or oblation, or incense, or place to sacrifice before thee, and to find mercy.

16 Nevertheless in a contrite heart and an humble spirit let us be accepted.

17 Like as in the burnt offerings of rams and bullocks, and like as in ten thousands of fat lambs: so let our sacrifice be in thy sight this day, and grant that we may wholly go after thee: for they shall not be confounded that put their trust in thee.

18 And now we follow thee with all our heart, we fear thee, and seek thy face.

19 Put us not to shame: but deal with us after thy lovingkindness, and according to the multitude of thy mercies.

20 Deliver us also according to thy marvellous works, and give glory to thy name, O YHWH: and let all them that do thy servants hurt be ashamed;

21 And let them be confounded in all their power and might, and let their strength be broken;

22 And let them know that thou art God, the only God, and glorious over the whole world.

23 And the king's servants, that put them in, ceased not to make the oven hot with rosin, pitch, tow, and small wood;

24 So that the flame streamed forth above the furnace forty and nine cubits.

25 And it passed through, and burned those Chaldeans it found about the furnace.

26 But the angel of YHWH came down into the oven together with Azariah and his fellows, and smote the flame of the fire out of the oven;

27 And made the midst of the furnace as it had been a moist whistling

wind, so that the fire touched them not at all, neither hurt nor troubled them.

28 Then the three, as out of one mouth, praised, glorified, and blessed, God in the furnace, saying,

29 Blessed art thou, O YHWH God of our fathers: and to be praised and exalted above all for ever.

30 And blessed is thy glorious and holy name: and to be praised and exalted above all for ever.

31 Blessed art thou in the temple of thine holy glory: and to be praised and glorified above all for ever.

32 Blessed art thou that beholdest the depths, and sittest upon the cherubims: and to be praised and exalted above all for ever.

33 Blessed art thou on the glorious throne of thy kingdom: and to be praised and glorified above all for ever.

34 Blessed art thou in the firmament of heaven: and above ail to be praised and glorified for ever.

35 O all ye works of YHWH, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever,

36 O ye heavens, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

37 O ye angels of YHWH, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

38 O all ye waters that be above the heaven, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

39 O all ye powers of YHWH, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

40 O ye sun and moon, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

41 O ye stars of heaven, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

42 O every shower and dew, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

43 O all ye winds, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever,

44 O ye fire and heat, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

45 O ye winter and summer, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

46 O ye dews and storms of snow, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

47 O ye nights and days, bless ye YHWH: bless and exalt him above all for ever.

48 O ye light and darkness, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

49 O ye ice and cold, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

50 O ye frost and snow, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

51 O ye lightnings and clouds, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

52 O let the earth bless YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

53 O ye mountains and little hills, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

54 O all ye things that grow in the earth, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

55 O ye mountains, bless ye YHWH: Praise and exalt him above all for ever.

56 O ye seas and rivers, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

57 O ye whales, and all that move in the waters, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

58 O all ye fowls of the air, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

59 O all ye beasts and cattle, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

60 O ye children of men, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

61 O Israel, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

62 O ye priests of YHWH, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

63 O ye servants of YHWH, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

64 O ye spirits and souls of the righteous, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

65 O ye holy and humble men of heart, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever.

66 O Ananias, Azariah, and Misael, bless ye YHWH: praise and exalt him above all for ever: for he hath delivered us from hell, and saved us from the hand of death, and delivered us out of the midst of the furnace and burning flame: even out of the midst of the fire hath he delivered us.

67 O give thanks unto YHWH, because he is gracious: for his mercy endureth for ever.

68 O all ye that worship YHWH, bless the God of gods, praise him, and give him thanks: for his mercy endureth for ever.

Bel and the Dragon, placed after Daniel 12:13.

1 And king Astyages was gathered to his fathers, and Cyrus of Persia received his kingdom.

2 And Daniel conversed with the king, and was honoured above all his friends.

3 Now the Babylons had an idol, called Bel, and there were spent upon him every day twelve great measures of fine flour, and forty sheep, and six vessels of wine.

4 And the king worshipped it and went daily to adore it: but Daniel worshipped his own God. And the king said unto him, Why dost not thou worship Bel?

5 Who answered and said, Because I may not worship idols made with hands, but the living God, who hath created the heaven and the earth, and hath sovereignty over all flesh.

6 Then said the king unto him, Thinkest thou not that Bel is a living God? seest thou not how much he eateth and drinketh every day?

7 Then Daniel smiled, and said, O king, be not deceived: for this is but clay within, and brass without, and did never eat or drink any thing.

8 So the king was wroth, and called for his priests, and said unto them, If ye tell me not who this is that devoureth these expences, ye shall die.

9 But if ye can certify me that Bel devoureth them, then Daniel shall die: for he hath spoken blasphemy against Bel. And Daniel said unto the king, Let it be according to thy word.

10 Now the priests of Bel were threescore and ten, beside their wives and children. And the king went with Daniel into the temple of Bel.

11 So Bel's priests said, Lo, we go out: but thou, O king, set on the meat, and make ready the wine, and shut the door fast and seal it with thine own signet;

12 And to morrow when thou comest in, if thou findest not that Bel hath eaten up all, we will suffer death: or else Daniel, that speaketh falsely against us.

13 And they little regarded it: for under the table they had made a privy entrance, whereby they entered in continually, and consumed those things.

14 So when they were gone forth, the king set meats before Bel. Now Daniel had commanded his servants to bring ashes, and those they strewed throughout all the temple in the presence of the king alone: then went they out, and shut the door, and sealed it with the king's signet, and so departed.

15 Now in the night came the priests with their wives and children, as they were wont to do, and did eat and drinck up all.

16 In the morning betime the king arose, and Daniel with him.

17 And the king said, Daniel, are the seals whole? And he said, Yea, O king, they be whole.

18 And as soon as he had opened the dour, the king looked upon the table, and cried with a loud voice, Great art thou, O Bel, and with thee is no deceit at all.

19 Then laughed Daniel, and held the king that he should not go in, and said, Behold now the pavement, and mark well whose footsteps are these.

20 And the king said, I see the footsteps of men, women, and children. And then the king was angry,

21 And took the priests with their wives and children, who shewed him the privy doors, where they came in, and consumed such things as were upon the table.

22 Therefore the king slew them, and delivered Bel into Daniel's power, who destroyed him and his temple.

23 And in that same place there was a great dragon, which they of Babylon worshipped.

24 And the king said unto Daniel, Wilt thou also say that this is of brass? lo, he liveth, he eateth and drinketh; thou canst not say that he is no living god: therefore worship him.

25 Then said Daniel unto the king, I will worship YHWH my God: for he is the living God.

26 But give me leave, O king, and I shall slay this dragon without sword or staff. The king said, I give thee leave.

27 Then Daniel took pitch, and fat, and hair, and did seethe them together, and made lumps thereof: this he put in the dragon's mouth, and so the dragon burst in sunder: and Daniel said, Lo, these are the gods ye worship.

28 When they of Babylon heard that, they took great indignation, and conspired against the king, saying, The king is become a Jew, and he hath destroyed Bel, he hath slain the dragon, and put the priests to death.

29 So they came to the king, and said, Deliver us Daniel, or else we will destroy thee and thine house.

30 Now when the king saw that they pressed him sore, being constrained, he delivered Daniel unto them:

31 Who cast him into the lions' den: where he was six days.

32 And in the den there were seven lions, and they had given them every day two carcasses, and two sheep: which then were not given to them, to the intent they might devour Daniel.

33 Now there was in Jewry a prophet, called Habbacuc, who had made pottage, and had broken bread in a bowl, and was going into the field, for to bring it to the reapers.

34 But the angel of YHWH said unto Habbacuc, Go, carry the dinner that thou hast into Babylon unto Daniel, who is in the lions' den.



35 And Habbacuc said, YHWH, I never saw Babylon; neither do I know where the den is.

36 Then the angel of YHWH took him by the crown, and bare him by the hair of his head, and through the vehemency of his spirit set him in Babylon over the den.

37 And Habbacuc cried, saying, O Daniel, Daniel, take the dinner which God hath sent thee.

38 And Daniel said, Thou hast remembered me, O God: neither hast thou forsaken them that seek thee and love thee.

39 So Daniel arose, and did eat: and the angel of YHWH set Habbacuc in his own place again immediately.

40 Upon the seventh day the king went to bewail Daniel: and when he came to the den, he looked in, and behold, Daniel was sitting.

41 Then cried the king with a loud voice, saying, Great art YHWH God of Daniel, and there is none other beside thee.

42 And he drew him out, and cast those that were the cause of his destruction into the den: and they were devoured in a moment before his face.

# Texts and Translations

## R. H. Charles

Enoch

Apocalypse of Baruch (*2 Baruch*)

Letter of Baruch

## The Greek Septuagint, translated by Sir Lancelot C. L. Brenton, 1851

Letter of Jeremiah

Baruch

## The 1611 King James Bible

Additions to Daniel

Apocalypse of Ezra (*4 Ezra / 2 Esdras 3-14*)

## Robert Lubbock Bensly, 1874

Apocalypse of Ezra 5:36-105 (*2 Esdras 7:36-105*)